

# JAPANESE 1 From Zero!



**Extensive Grammar!**

**Learn Hiragana!**

**Workbook Included!**

**George Trombley Jr.  
Yukari Takenaka**

**Learn to  
Speak, Read  
and Write  
Japanese!**

George Trombley has worked as a professional Japanese interpreter for over 20 years specializing in business, technical, medical, and entertainment simultaneous interpreting. In 1998, George and Yukari Takenaka created Japanese From Zero's live Japanese language classes in Las Vegas, NV, and developed their classes into the *Japanese From Zero!* book series and the YesJapan.com interactive Japanese language education website.

Distributed worldwide by:  
From Zero, LLC  
10624 S. Eastern Ave. #A769,  
Henderson, NV 89052.

Copyright © 2014 YesJapan Corporation. All Rights Reserved.  
Printed in USA & England.  
ISBN-10: 0976998122  
ISBN-13: 978-097699812

1st edition, 2006  
2nd edition, 2008  
3rd edition, (major update) 2011  
3rd edition (minor update), November, 2011  
3rd edition (minor update), August, 2012  
3rd edition (minor update), September, 2012  
4th edition (skipped due to bad luck)  
5th edition (minor update), September, 2014

JapaneseFromZero.com

# Japanese From Zero! Book 1

## – CONTENTS –

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Welcome! .....</b>  | <b>11</b>     |
| <b>Introduction</b>   |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Welcome to JAPANESE FROM ZERO!                                     |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Japanese characters  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Japanese punctuation facts   |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> About the pre-lessons  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> About the authors  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> WRITE IN THIS BOOK!  |               |
| <br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Pre-Lesson A: Pronunciation Guide &amp; The Basics.....</b> | <br><b>13</b> |
| <b>Why Learn Hiragana?</b>  |               |
| <b>The Japanese Writing Systems</b>   |               |
| <b>Japanese Pronunciation .....</b>   | <b>14</b>     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Normal vowels  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Double vowels  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Long versus short sounds   |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Double consonants  |               |
| <br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Pre-Lesson B: Basic Counting .....</b>                      | <br><b>17</b> |
| <b>The Basic Numbers</b>  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Single Numbers   |               |
| <b>Culture Clip: Why Two Versions?</b>  |               |
| <b>The Counting Units .....</b>   | <b>18</b>     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The teens  |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The tens   |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Combining tens and singles   |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The hundreds and thousands   |               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Putting all the numbers together                                   |               |
| <b>Lesson Activities.....</b>   | <b>21</b>     |
| <br><input type="checkbox"/> <b>Pre-Lesson C: First Meeting .....</b>                       | <br><b>22</b> |
| <b>Culture clip: Bowing</b>   |               |
| <b>Conversation かいわ .....</b>   | <b>23</b>     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Meeting someone for the first time                                 |               |

- ☐ Asking someone their age
- ☐ Learning to say your age
- ☐ How old do I look?

**Speaking Naturally** しぜんに はなすこと ..... 26

- ☐ My name is...

**Lesson Activities**..... 27

## ☐ **Pre-Lesson D: Coming and Going**..... 29

**New Phrases** あたらしい ことば ..... 29

- ☐ Daily Greetings
- ☐ Leaving and returning home

**Speaking Naturally** しぜんに はなすこと ..... 31

- ☐ The silent "U" sound

**Lesson Activities**..... 31

**Vocabulary Groups**..... 32

- the body
- bed and bath

## ☐ **Lesson 1: Creating Simple Sentences** ..... 34

**Grammar** ぶんぽう ..... 35

- ☐ Plurals
- ☐ Using *desu* to make a simple statement
- ☐ Making a question using *ka*
- ☐ The question word *nani*

**Culture Clip: Using *san* for Mr., Mrs., etc.**

**Hiragana** あいうえお ..... 38

**Writing Basics** かくときの きほん ..... 40

- ☐ What is a stroke?
- ☐ Why use brushes to write?
- ☐ Different types of brush strokes
- ☐ The importance of the various styles

**Writing Points** かくポイント ..... 41

- ☐ The difference between あ (a) and お (o)
- ☐ Writing left-to-right and top-to-bottom

**Lesson Activities**..... 46

**Sentence Building** ぶんのつくり ..... 48

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>□ Lesson 2: Working with a Topic.....</b>   | <b>49</b> |
| <b>Culture Clip: Sushi and Sashimi</b>   |           |
| <b>Cool Tools</b> クール・ツール.....   | <b>51</b> |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....  | <b>51</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The topic marker <i>wa</i>                                    |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using <i>wa</i> in a variety of sentences                     |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The question words <i>dore</i> and <i>docchi</i>              |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Following the same pattern when answering                     |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using what you know to learn more                             |           |
| <b>Speaking Naturally</b> しぜんにはなすこと .....  | <b>54</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Dropping the topic of a sentence                              |           |
| <b>Hiragana</b> かきくけこ .....  | <b>56</b> |
| <b>Writing Points</b> かくポイント .....   | <b>57</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The dakuten   |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Writing が ( <i>ga</i> ) the correct way                       |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The different versions of き ( <i>ki</i> )                     |           |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....   | <b>62</b> |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....   | <b>66</b> |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....   | <b>67</b> |
| ● family   |           |
| ● greetings and farewells  |           |
| <b>□ Lesson 3: Possession .....</b>  | <b>68</b> |
| <b>Culture Clip: Interesting information about bo く</b>                                |           |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....  | <b>70</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The question word <i>dare</i>                                 |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using <i>wa</i> with <i>dare</i>                              |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Assuming the topic based on context                           |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Starting sentences with or without question words             |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> How to start a sentence with a question word using が          |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Making words possessive with the particle <i>no</i>           |           |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Showing possession of objects using <i>no</i>                 |           |
| <b>Hiragana</b> さしすせそ .....  | <b>77</b> |
| <b>Writing Points</b> かくポイント .....   | <b>78</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The different versions of さ ( <i>sa</i> ) and そ ( <i>so</i> ) |           |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....  | 83  |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....  | 87  |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....  | 88  |
| ● animals   |     |
| <b>□ Lesson 4: Colors and Adjectives</b> .....                                    | 89  |
| <b>Culture Clip: Green is Blue?</b>   |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....   | 91  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The particle <i>to</i>                                   |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Making nouns into adjectives using <i>no</i>             |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using colors to describe                                 |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> い adjectives   |     |
| <b>Hiragana</b> たちつてと .....   | 96  |
| <b>Writing Points</b> かくポイント .....  | 97  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The double consonants                                    |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The double consonant sound analysis                      |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Which version of <i>zu</i> and <i>ji</i> should be used? |     |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....  | 102 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....  | 106 |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....  | 107 |
| ● things around the house   |     |
| <b>□ Lesson 5: Likes and Dislikes</b> .....                                       | 108 |
| <b>New Adjectives</b> あたらしい けいようし   |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....   | 109 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The particle <i>が</i> with すき and き ら い                  |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using jana い to make things negative                     |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The "one" pronoun  |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using ja あ to say "Well then..."                         |     |
| <b>Speaking Naturally</b> しぜんにはなすこと .....   | 111 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using き ら い versus すき jana い                             |     |
| <b>Hiragana</b> なにぬねの .....   | 114 |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....  | 119 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Short dialogue   |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Short dialogue activities                                |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> More words you can write                                 |     |



|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり .....                          | 124 |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                                 | 125 |
| ● sports and entertainment                                     |     |
| ● fruit  |     |
| <b>□ Lesson 6: Wanting and Not Wanting</b> .....               | 126 |
| <b>Culture Clip</b> カルチャー クリップ                                 |     |
| <b>New Adjectives</b> あたらしい けいようし                              |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....                                      | 128 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Making adjectives negative            |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The colors as negative adjectives     |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Wanting and not wanting               |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tricky uses of the particle の         |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Numbers and money                     |     |
| <b>Hiragana</b> はひふへほ.....                                     | 132 |
| <b>Writing Points</b> かくポイント .....                             | 134 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> What is that circle?                  |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Why isn't ふ written as <i>HU</i> ?    |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The easy way to write ふ (fu)          |     |
| <b>Special Usage</b> とくべつな つかいかた.....                          | 136 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The topic marker は (wa)               |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The direction marker へ (e)            |     |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....                                 | 140 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                           | 144 |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                                 | 145 |
| ● transportation   |     |
| <b>□ Lesson 7: Locations</b> .....                             | 146 |
| <b>New Adjectives</b> あたらしい けいようし                              |     |
| <b>Word Usage</b> ことばの つかいかた                                   |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Yo くない vs いくない                        |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....                                      | 148 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using で mo                            |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The rules for using は (wa) and が (ga) |     |
| <b>Mini Conversation</b> ミニかいわ J→E                             |     |
| <b>Hiragana</b> まみむめも .....                                    | 153 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....                             | 158 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                       | 162 |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                             | 163 |
| ● more animals   |     |
| <b>□ Lesson 8: Dates and Past Tense</b> .....              | 164 |
| <b>Culture Clip: Christmas and other holidays in Japan</b> |     |
| <b>Cool Tools</b> クール・ツール.....                             | 167 |
| <b>Months</b> つき   |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....                                  | 168 |
| □ Making sentences in the past tense                       |     |
| □ Saying dates with month and day of the month             |     |
| <b>Hiragana</b> やゆよわをん .....                               | 172 |
| <b>Special Usage</b> とくべつな つかいかた.....                      | 174 |
| □ The particle を (wo)                                      |     |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....                             | 177 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                       | 181 |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                             | 182 |
| ● food and drink   |     |
| <b>□ Lesson 9: Days, Weeks, and Years</b> .....            | 183 |
| <b>Culture Clip: Japan's New Year</b>                      |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....                                  | 185 |
| □ Expressing the year                                      |     |
| □ Saying complete dates including the year                 |     |
| □ Next Friday, last March, etc.                            |     |
| <b>Hiragana</b> らりるれろ .....                                | 188 |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....                             | 193 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                       | 197 |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                             | 197 |
| ● nature   |     |



|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>□ Lesson 10: Asking for Things .....</b>                         | <b>198</b> |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....   | <b>199</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Please give me (standard)                  |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Please give me (polite)                    |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The difference between ください and おねがい します   |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The particle も                             |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> A funny problem with particle choice       |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Sizes                                      |            |
| <b>Compound Hiragana</b> .....                                      | <b>205</b> |
| <b>Writing Points</b> かくポイント .....                                  | <b>205</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The correct way to write compound hiragana |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Compound Hiragana                          |            |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....                                      | <b>214</b> |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                                | <b>217</b> |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                                      | <b>218</b> |
| ● direction words   |            |
| ● things around the house II  |            |
| <b>□ Lesson 11: Counting Objects.....</b>                           | <b>219</b> |
| <b>Explanation</b> せつめい   |            |
| <b>Counters</b> カウンター   |            |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....   | <b>223</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The counters and particles                 |            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> More                                       |            |
| <b>Hiragana: The Next Step</b> .....                                | <b>227</b> |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....                                      | <b>228</b> |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                                | <b>231</b> |
| <b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....                                      | <b>232</b> |
| ● at school   |            |
| ● at the office, etc.   |            |
| ● insects   |            |
| <b>□ Lesson 12: Japanese Verbs.....</b>                             | <b>233</b> |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....   | <b>234</b> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Polite versus informal speaking            |            |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Conjugating verbs into the polite form       |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Location particles に and へ                   |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Time particle に                              |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Time particle usage with きょう、せんしゅう、らいねん etc. |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Sentence structure using verbs               |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using the verb わかる                           |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Languages and nationalities                  |     |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....  | 246 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                                  | 251 |
| <b><input type="checkbox"/> Lesson 13: Telling Time</b> .....         | 252 |
| Time じかん  |     |
| <b>Grammar</b> ぶんぼう .....   | 254 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> AM and PM                                    |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Half past                                    |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using the particle から                        |     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Using the particle まで                        |     |
| <b>Lesson Activities</b> .....  | 261 |
| <b>Sentence Building</b> ぶんのつくり.....                                  | 268 |
| <b><input type="checkbox"/> Appendix: Everyday Phrases</b> .....      | 270 |
| <b><input type="checkbox"/> Appendix: Last Names</b> .....            | 274 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Common Japanese surnames and their meaning   |     |
| <b><input type="checkbox"/> Appendix: Girls' Given Names</b> .....    | 276 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Common Japanese given names for girls        |     |
| <b><input type="checkbox"/> Appendix: Boys' Given Names</b> .....     | 278 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Common Japanese given names for boys         |     |
| <b><input type="checkbox"/> Answer Key</b> .....                      | 279 |
| English Glossary .....  | 299 |
| Ro-maji Glossary .....  | 309 |
| Kana Glossary .....   | 319 |
| Japan Map.....  | 321 |
| Hiragana Chart.....   | 322 |

**Introduction****Welcome to JAPANESE FROM ZERO!**

LEARNING JAPANESE can be intimidating at first, but don't worry! Our method is designed to lead you step-by-step through the basics of Japanese grammar.

Whether you're learning Japanese for business, travel, or to make new friends, we've created these lessons to make sure you feel confident in your ability to SPEAK, READ, and WRITE what you've learned.

**❑ Japanese characters**

WHAT ARE THESE STRANGE LETTERS? The Japanese language uses a set of symbols called *hiragana* (to spell Japanese words), *katakana* (to spell foreign words), and *kanji* (to represent entire words or names). Over the course of BOOK 1, we will teach you groups of hiragana piece-by-piece to gradually build up your understanding and familiarity.

Our lessons begin with *ro-maji* (Japanese words spelled with Roman letters), but as each lesson progresses, we will continually substitute the hiragana you've learned. By the end of this book, you'll not only be able to speak Japanese, but read and write it too!

**❑ Japanese punctuation facts**

HERE ARE SOME QUICK FACTS about Japanese writing to help you get started.

UPPERCASE/LOWERCASE

In English, we learn to write both *A* and *a*, but in Japanese, あ is always あ no matter where you find it in a sentence. There are no upper and lower cases in Japanese

QUESTION MARKS

Written Japanese doesn't (normally) use the question mark punctuation (?). Instead the hiragana か (ka) is placed at the end of a sentence to indicate a question.

**Example**

Nan desu ka. = What is it?

Both are questions, but in Japanese, using *ka* does the trick. (More on this in Lesson 1.)

PERIODS (or "What's that funny-looking circle?")

### Example

Kore wa hon desu. → converted to hiragana becomes → これは ほんです。

This punctuation mark 。 does exactly the same job as the period you normally use to end a sentence in English.

## □ About the pre-lessons

Before this book introduces grammar concepts in lesson 1, there will be 4 pre-lessons. The pre-lessons are designed to give you some of the tools needed to begin to interact with native Japanese speakers. You will learn pronunciation, basic counting, initial conversation phrases, and other basic concepts.

Once you complete the pre-lessons, you will learn many key Japanese grammar concepts and how to read and write hiragana.

## □ About the authors

Author George Trombley is a professional Japanese interpreter who over the past 16 years has interpreted at corporations such as Microsoft, IBM, NTT DoCoMo, Lucent Technologies, and in countries throughout North America, Europe, Asia and the Middle East.

George Trombley and his wife Yukari Takenaka formed the YesJapan Language School in 1998 in Las Vegas, NV. Since then, the live classroom courses have formed the basis for the *Japanese From Zero!* textbook series and the YesJapan.com interactive language learning website.

## □ WRITE IN THIS BOOK!

This book is your tool to learning in a way that will stick! Learning Japanese is hard work so we want your knowledge to last forever. *Japanese From Zero!* is designed to be an interactive workbook where you can take personal notes, add new words or phrases of your own, and develop your writing skills from hopeless/crazy/illegible (we all start that way!) to expert level.

Every time you write in this book, you're making your connection to Japanese a little bit stronger - we guarantee it!

Ganbatte kudasai!  
George Trombley  
Yukari Takenaka

Pre-Lesson

**A**

Level ①

## Pronunciation Guide & The Basics

Understanding Japanese phonetics



### **A** Why Learn Hiragana?

It's important to know how powerful your Japanese will be if you can read and write it. Learning to read and write Japanese gives your brain a turbo boost in comprehension. You will immediately see how knowing the hiragana benefits your Japanese pronunciation.

All of your life you have been reading the alphabet a certain way. You have learned that the letter combination "TO" sounds like the number 2. This instinct will be hard to overcome at first. In Japanese, "TO" is read as "TOW". If you read this like you were taught in grade school your Japanese accent would be pretty bad! But don't worry - this book will teach you the correct way to read the Japanese hiragana writing system.

Before you can learn hiragana and katakana, you will need to know how Japanese is represented in the Roman alphabet. This lesson will teach you how Japanese is pronounced. Let's get started!

### **A** The Japanese Writing Systems

There are three Japanese writing systems:

- hiragana (pronounced "hear-uh-gah-nah")
- katakana (pronounced "kah-tah-kah-nah")
- kanji (pronounced "kahn-jee")

Kanji are Chinese characters, and each one has a specific meaning. Many kanji have multiple meanings and can be read different ways. Hiragana and katakana are phonetic characters derived from the more complicated kanji. They each represent a sound and do not have meaning by themselves.

The three writing systems are used together to write Japanese. Hiragana and kanji are used together to form all Japanese words. Katakana is mostly used to represent words of foreign origin or any word that was not originally Japanese. In daily life the combination of these three systems, plus roman letters called "ro-maji", are used in all types of media.

## A Japanese Pronunciation

Anyone can sound great in Japanese. Although English is made up of over a thousand possible sounds, Japanese has many less. A little over a hundred sounds are all you need to speak Japanese.

For this reason, it is much easier for English-speaking people to learn natural Japanese pronunciation than it is for Japanese speakers to learn natural English pronunciation. With just a few exceptions, Japanese sounds are based on the following five vowel sounds:

### □ Normal vowels

These sounds are short and simple, with no glide or lengthening.

| Roman Letter | Sounds Like     | Example       |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| a            | ah as in father | akai (red)    |
| i            | ee as in see    | inochi (life) |
| u            | oo as in zoo    | uma (horse)   |
| e            | eh as in men    | ebi (shrimp)  |
| o            | oh as in boat   | otoko (man)   |

Now let's look at some of the sounds that make up the Japanese language. Use the same pronunciation as above for the sound sets listed below

|                    |                     |                    |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| ka, ki, ku, ke, ko | sa, shi, su, se, so | pa, pi, pu, pe, po |
| ga, gi, gu, ge, go | na, ni, nu, ne, no  | ba, bi, bu, be, bo |

The following phonetic sounds are based on the "normal vowel" sounds listed above. The only difference is how the sound starts.

| Roman Letter | Sounds Like | Example             |
|--------------|-------------|---------------------|
| ka           | kah         | ka (mosquito)       |
| shi          | shee        | shiru (to know)     |
| tsu          | tsoo        | tsuru (crane bird)  |
| ne           | neh         | neko (cat)          |
| po           | poh         | tanpopo (dandelion) |

## ❑ Double vowels

In Japanese it is common that sounds will be lengthened. For example, in some words you will see a sound such as KA followed by an A, or NE followed by E, etc., to lengthen the sound.

Some books will represent the lengthened sound with a straight line over the lengthened vowel. This method may help you verbally, but doesn't help you when learning how to read and write Japanese. In *Japanese from Zero!*, A, I, U, E, or O is added to the sound that is to be lengthened just as the actual hiragana symbols are added to the word when written in Japanese. Look at the possible long vowel sound combinations.

| Roman Letters | Sound                  | Example                       |
|---------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| aa, a—        | <b>ah</b> as in father | <b>okaasan</b> (mother)       |
| ii, i—        | <b>ee</b> as in see    | <b>ojiisan</b> (grandfather)  |
| uu, u—        | <b>oo</b> as in zoo    | <b>zutsuu</b> (headache)      |
| ei, ee, e—    | <b>eh</b> as in men    | <b>oneesan</b> (older sister) |
| ou, oo, o—    | <b>oh</b> as in boat   | <b>moufu</b> (blanket)        |

Words that are written in katakana use a "—" as the "lengthener" instead of a repeating vowel. You'll learn more about katakana in *Japanese From Zero!* book 2.

| Example Words    |        |                   |             |
|------------------|--------|-------------------|-------------|
| kyouts <u>uu</u> | common | ot <u>ou</u> san  | father      |
| sat <u>ou</u>    | sugar  | oba <u>aa</u> san | grandmother |
| heiwa            | peace  | sen <u>so</u>     | war         |
| yasash <u>i</u>  | kind   | isogash <u>i</u>  | busy        |

## ❑ Long versus short sounds

The meaning of a Japanese word can be changed by lengthening just one syllable.

| Examples |                   |             |
|----------|-------------------|-------------|
|          | ie                | house       |
|          | <u>i</u> ie       | no          |
|          | obasan            | aunt        |
|          | oba <u>aa</u> san | grandmother |
|          | ojisan            | uncle       |
|          | oji <u>i</u> san  | grandfather |



## ❑ Double consonants

Some Japanese words use double consonant sounds. Double consonants such as 'kk', 'pp', 'tt', and 'cch' must be stressed more than a single consonant to show the correct meaning of a word.

### Examples

roku  
rokku

number six  
rock (music)

uta  
utta

a song  
sold (past tense verb)

mata  
matta

again  
waited (past tense verb)

Pre-Lesson

**B**

Level ①

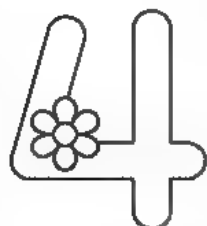
**Basic Counting**

0 to 9999

1 2  
3 4**B The Basic Numbers****Single Numbers**

Basic counting in Japanese is easy! All you have to do is remember the following list of numbers, a few rules, and you're on the way.

| the single numbers – 0-10 |          |    |
|---------------------------|----------|----|
| rei, maru, zero ☆         | れい、まる、ゼロ | 0  |
| ichi                      | いち       | 1  |
| ni                        | に        | 2  |
| san                       | さん       | 3  |
| shi, yon ☆                | し、よん     | 4  |
| go                        | ご        | 5  |
| roku                      | ろく       | 6  |
| shichi, nana ☆            | しち、なな    | 7  |
| hachi                     | はち       | 8  |
| ku, kyuu ☆                | く、きゅう    | 9  |
| juu                       | じゅう      | 10 |

**B Culture Clip: Why Two Versions?**

The numbers with a ☆ have more than one version. Sometimes one version must be used instead of the other, but many times the version used is a personal preference.

There are also some cultural reasons for the different versions. The number four in Japanese is *yon*, or *shi*. *Shi* also means death. The number nine in Japanese is *kyuu* or *ku*. *Ku* also means suffering



For these reasons, four and nine are considered to be unlucky in Japan. Many apartment buildings in Japan do not have apartments numbered four or nine. The different versions are used extensively in Japanese, so make sure to remember them.

## B The Counting Units

### □ The teens

To form numbers from 11 to 19, start with *juu* (10) and place the additional number you need directly after it. It is much like counting with roman numerals.

| the teens – 11-19             |             |    |
|-------------------------------|-------------|----|
| <i>juu ichi</i>               | じゅういち       | 11 |
| <i>juu ni</i>                 | じゅうに        | 12 |
| <i>juu san</i>                | じゅうさん       | 13 |
| <i>juu yon, juu shi ☆</i>     | じゅうよん、じゅうし  | 14 |
| <i>juu go</i>                 | じゅうご        | 15 |
| <i>juu roku</i>               | じゅうろく       | 16 |
| <i>juu nana, juu shichi ☆</i> | じゅうなな、じゅうしち | 17 |
| <i>juu hachi</i>              | じゅうはち       | 18 |
| <i>juu kyu, juu ku ☆</i>      | じゅうきゅう、じゅうく | 19 |

### □ The tens

The tens are formed by combining the single numbers with *juu*. For example, 20 is two tens (*ni juu*), and 50 is five tens (*go juu*). The concept is simple. Look at this chart:

| the tens – 10-90 |                    |        |    |
|------------------|--------------------|--------|----|
| <i>juu</i>       |                    | じゅう    | 10 |
| <i>ni juu</i>    |                    | にじゅう   | 20 |
| <i>san juu</i>   |                    | さんじゅう  | 30 |
| <i>yon juu</i>   | never “sh juu”     | よんじゅう  | 40 |
| <i>go juu</i>    |                    | ごじゅう   | 50 |
| <i>roku juu</i>  |                    | ろくじゅう  | 60 |
| <i>nana juu</i>  | never “sh chi juu” | ななじゅう  | 70 |
| <i>hachi juu</i> |                    | はちじゅう  | 80 |
| <i>kyuu juu</i>  | never “ku juu”     | きゅうじゅう | 90 |

### □ Combining tens and singles

To make a number like 31, just string the numbers 30 and 1 together.

#### Examples

31 is *san juu* (three tens) + *ichi* (one) = *san juu ichi*  
 52 is *go juu* (five tens) + *ni* (two) = *go juu ni*  
 87 is *hachi juu* (eight tens) + *nana* (seven) = *hachi juu nana*

|                      |             |    |
|----------------------|-------------|----|
| ni juu ichi          | にじゅういち      | 21 |
| ni juu ni            | にじゅうに       | 22 |
| ni juu san           | にじゅうさん      | 23 |
| ni juu yon / shi     | にじゅうよん / し  | 24 |
| ni juu go            | にじゅうご       | 25 |
| ni juu roku          | にじゅうろく      | 26 |
| ni juu nana / shichi | にじゅうなな / しち | 27 |
| ni juu hachi         | にじゅうはち      | 28 |
| ni juu ku / kyuu     | にじゅうく / きゅう | 29 |

## □ The hundreds and thousands

With *hyaku* (hundreds) and *sen* (thousands), the pattern is basically the same, but there are some variations. The variations are marked with ☆.

| the hundreds – 100-900 |                      |        |     |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------|-----|
| hyaku                  |                      | ひゃく    | 100 |
| ni hyaku               |                      | にひゃく   | 200 |
| san byaku ☆            | never “san hyaku”    | さんびゃく  | 300 |
| yon hyaku              | never “shi hyaku”    | よんひゃく  | 400 |
| go hyaku               |                      | ごひゃく   | 500 |
| roppyaku ☆             | never “roku hyaku”   | ろっぴゃく  | 600 |
| nana hyaku             | never “shichi hyaku” | ななひゃく  | 700 |
| happyaku ☆             | never “hachi hyaku”  | はっぴゃく  | 800 |
| kyuu hyaku             | never “ku hyaku”     | きゅうひゃく | 900 |

| the thousands – 1000-9000 |                    |         |       |
|---------------------------|--------------------|---------|-------|
| sen, issen                |                    | せん、いっせん | 1,000 |
| ni sen                    |                    | にせん     | 2,000 |
| san zen ☆                 | never “san sen”    | さんぜん    | 3,000 |
| yon sen                   | never “shi sen”    | よんせん    | 4,000 |
| go sen                    |                    | ごせん     | 5,000 |
| roku sen                  |                    | ろくせん    | 6,000 |
| nana sen                  | never “shichi sen” | ななせん    | 7,000 |
| hassen ☆                  | never “hachi sen”  | はっせん    | 8,000 |
| kyuu sen                  | never “ku sen”     | きゅうせん   | 9,000 |

## ❑ Putting all the numbers together

Now that you know the hundreds and thousands you can simply string the numbers together to say numbers up to 9,999. The first few examples below will use repeating numbers to help you get used to putting the numbers together.

### Examples

- |          |                                   |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. 222   | ni hyaku ni juu ni                |
| 2. 555   | go hyaku go juu go                |
| 3. 888   | happyaku hachi juu hachi          |
| 4. 4,444 | yon sen yon hyaku yon juu yon     |
| 5. 7,777 | nana sen nana hyaku nana juu nana |

Now let's mix up the numbers. Make sure you understand the numbers with exceptions to the patterns.

### Examples

- |          |                              |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 1. 639   | roppyaku san juu kyuu        |
| 2. 360   | sanbyaku roku juu            |
| 3. 2,512 | ni sen go hyaku juu ni       |
| 4. 8,096 | hassen kyuu juu roku         |
| 5. 9,853 | kyuu sen happyaku go juu san |

## B For practice れんしゅうのため

Practice saying your phone, cell phone, fax numbers, etc., in Japanese. Learn them forwards and backwards.

When you are riding in your car, practice reading the numbers on other cars' license plates.



**B Lesson Activities****□ Number conversion**

Write out the following numbers in Japanese.

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1) 34 _____    | 2) 59 _____     |
| 3) 29 _____    | 4) 78 _____     |
| 5) 120 _____   | 6) 392 _____    |
| 7) 57 _____    | 8) 3,004 _____  |
| 9) 1,203 _____ | 10) 789 _____   |
| 11) 99 _____   | 12) 4,675 _____ |
| 13) 932 _____  | 14) 8,773 _____ |

**□ Everyday Numbers**

Follow the instructions for each task.

1. Write your home phone number in Japanese.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Write your cellular number, or work phone number in Japanese.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Write your license plate number in Japanese. (Write any letters in ro-maji)

\_\_\_\_\_

Pre-Lesson

**C**

Level ①

**First Meeting**

Self introduction and basic greetings

Hajimemashite

**C About This Lesson このレッスンについて**

If there is one thing you need to be good at, it is introducing yourself. You should practice this as often as you can. You only get one first impression.

The good news is that not being a Japanese speaker gives you an advantage. If you mess up your initial introduction, you will most likely be forgiven. You are not Japanese, and everyone will understand that you are still learning.

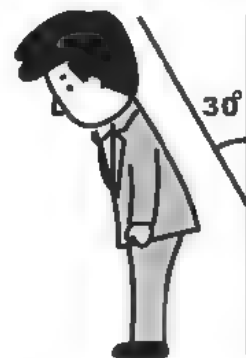
**C Culture clip: Bowing**

In the next conversation you will be able to practice a first-meeting conversation, but what you cannot see in the text is the bow that each person does when they say, "*Hajimemashite*." Bowing is as important to the Japanese as shaking hands is to others.

Many of us have always heard that the deeper you bow, the more respect you bestow upon the person to whom you are bowing. This is true, though the majority of students learning Japanese will not find themselves in a situation that warrants a deep bow. When first meeting someone, a 30-degree bow held for about two seconds is standard. But keep in mind that, as

a foreigner to Japan, the Japanese do not expect you to know Japanese customs, and if you bow incorrectly it will not be considered rude.

The most common everyday bow is an informal 15-degree bow held for one or two seconds. You will be bowed to no matter where you go. The next time you see a Japanese person talking on the phone, you might even see them bowing to the person on the other end of the conversation! It is not necessary to return bows to waiters or staff in department stores. A nod of the head will suffice.



Hands are normally kept near the body when bowing. Men tend to have their hands at their sides while, women will usually place them together on their thighs with the fingertips overlapping or touching.



## C Conversation かいわ

### □ Meeting someone for the first time

Let's look at the phrases that will come up when you first meet someone

#### 1. Hajimemashite

**Nice to meet you. / How do you do?**

This phrase is only used when first meeting someone. When pronouncing "Hajimemashite" make sure that the "i" in "mashite" is silent to sound similar to "mashte".

#### 2.     (name)     to moushimasu.

**I am     (name)    .**

Although there are other ways to say your name, this is an excellent way to introduce yourself. It is very polite and humble at the same time. It is the equivalent to saying "I am called \_\_\_\_\_".

#### 3. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

**Best regards. / I look forward to working with you.**

It's amazing how many different meanings there are for this phrase. This phrase is multi-purpose and its meaning varies depending on the situation. When used as it is in Conversation 1, it means something to the effect of, "Let's be nice to each other."

Although this phrase is very common when speaking Japanese, there is not an English equivalent that properly sums up its many meanings. Now let's see the phrases we have learned in action.

### Conversation 1: First meeting

This conversation is between people meeting for the first time. Mr. Smith (Sumisu) is American and Mr. Mori is Japanese.

**Mr. Smith:** Hajimemashite. Sumisu to moushimasu.

**Mr. Mori:** Hajimemashite. Mori to moushi masu. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu

**Mr. Smith:** Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

**Mr. Smith:** Nice to meet you. I am Smith (My name is Smith).

**Mr. Mori:** Nice to meet you. I am Mori (My name is Mori). Best regards.

**Mr. Smith:** Best regards

## ❑ Asking someone their age

Early on in your quest to learn Japanese, your conversations will be limited to what you can reliably understand and say in Japanese. Although the topic of "age" is not normally discussed in first time situations (and might be especially awkward in a business meeting!), it isn't a strange topic to discuss when meeting new people outside of business.

1. **Nansai desu ka.**  
How old are you?

2.     (years)     **sai desu.**  
I am     (years)     years old.

If needed, please review the numbers you learned in the prior lesson. The word "sai" literally means "years old." It must always come after the number representing your age.

|                 |               |                  |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|
| <b>Examples</b> | 3 years old   | san sai          |
|                 | 15 years old  | juu go sai       |
|                 | 100 years old | hyaku <u>sai</u> |

### Conversation 2: How old are you?

**Mr. Smith:** Nansai desu ka.  
**Ms. Hayashi:** Ni juu go sai desu.  
  
**Mr. Smith:** How old are you?  
**Ms. Hayashi:** I am 25 years old.

## ❑ Learning to say your age

As previously stated, to say your age, just add *sai* after the number of years. Some ages are said differently than you might think. Use the chart below to learn the correct way.

| years old - とし |          |                    |
|----------------|----------|--------------------|
| 1 year old     | issai    | never "ichi sai"   |
| 2 years old    | ni sai   |                    |
| 3 years old    | san sai  |                    |
| 4 years old    | yon sai  | never "shi sai"    |
| 5 years old    | go sai   |                    |
| 6 years old    | roku sai |                    |
| 7 years old    | nana sai | never "shichi sai" |
| 8 years old    | hassai   | never "hachi sai"  |

|  |                 |   |
|--|-----------------|---|
| 9 years old  | kyuu sai        | never “kusai” ( <i>kusai</i> means smelly!) |
| 10 years old   | jussai          | never “juu sai”                             |
| 11 years old   | juu issai       | never “juu ichi sai”                        |
| 12 years old   | juu ni sai      |   |
| 13 years old   | juu san sai     |   |
| 14 years old   | juu yon sai     | never “juu shi sai”                         |
| 15 years old   | juu go sai      |   |
| 16 years old   | juu roku sai    |   |
| 17 years old   | juu nana sai    | never “juu shichi sai”                      |
| 18 years old   | juu hassai      | never “juu hachi sai”                       |
| 19 years old   | juu kyuu sai    |   |
| 20 years old   | hatachi         | never “ni juu sai”                          |
| 21 years old   | ni juu issai    | never “ni juu ichi sai”                     |
| 22 years old   | ni juu ni sai   |   |
| 23 years old   | ni juu san sai  |   |
| 24 years old   | ni juu yon sai  | never “ni juu shi sai”                      |
| 25 years old   | ni juu go sai   |   |
| 26 years old   | ni juu roku sai |   |
| 27 years old   | ni juu nana sai | never “ni juu shichi sai”                   |
| 28 years old   | ni juu hassai   | never “ni juu hachi sai”                    |
| 29 years old   | ni juu kyuu sai | never “ni juu ku sai”                       |
| 30 years old   | san jussai      | never “san juu sai”                         |
| 40 years old   | yon jussai      | never “shi juu sai” or “yon juu sai”        |
| 50 years old   | go jussai       | never “go juu sai”                          |
| 100 years old  | hyaku sai       | sometimes said as “hyakkusai”               |
| <b>Note:</b> The first ten numbers set the pattern for all the numbers that follow |                 |   |

## □ How old do I look?

In your beginning stages of learning Japanese, the following conversation will be a really fun way to break the ice with your new Japanese friends. It is especially fun since Westerners and Japanese have different perceptions about how old someone looks.

### 1. Nansai ni miemasu ka.

**How old do I look?**

This is probably the most common response to “Nansai desu ka.” Keep in mind that honesty can be brutal in any language, so be kind with your answer! This phrase is great because it gives you and your new friend an opportunity for fun.

### 2. \_\_\_\_ (years) \_\_\_\_ sai ni miemasu.

You look \_\_\_\_ (years) \_\_\_\_ years old.

## Conversation 3 How old do I look?

**Mr. Smith:** Nansai desu ka.  
**Ms. Hayashi:** Nansai ni miemasu ka.  
**Mr. Smith:** Hatachi ni miemasu.

**Mr. Smith:** How old are you?  
**Ms. Hayashi:** How old do I look?  
**Mr. Smith:** You look 20 years old.

## C Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

As with any language, there is "grammatically correct" and "culturally correct". In this section you will learn how to sound more natural when speaking Japanese. In some cases you might even learn how to break a rule you just learned, and in some cases you might learn what is more commonly used.

### □ My name is...

Many new students of Japanese learn to say "Watashi no namae wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu", which means, "My name is \_\_\_\_\_." However, although grammatically correct, this way of introducing yourself is not common between Japanese people.

## Conversation 4: My name is... (grammatically correct)

**Ms. Hayashi:** (O)namae wa nan desu ka.  
**Mr. Smith:** Watashi no namae wa Sumisu desu.

**Ms. Hayashi:** What is your name?  
**Mr. Smith:** My name is Smith.

## Conversation 5: My name is... (the natural way)

**Ms. Hayashi:** (O)namae wa nan desu ka.  
**Mr. Smith:** Sumisu to moushimasu.

**Ms. Hayashi:** What is your name?  
**Mr. Smith:** I am Smith (My name is Smith).

**C Lesson Activities**☐ **Japanese numbers**

Translate the following Japanese into English.

- |                     |       |                 |       |
|---------------------|-------|-----------------|-------|
| 1. nana juu go sai  | _____ | 6. juu roku sai | _____ |
| 2. yon juu hassai   | _____ | 7. go juu issai | _____ |
| 3. hachi juu ni sai | _____ | 8. hatachi      | _____ |
| 4. hyaku nana sai   | _____ | 9. happyaku sai | _____ |
| 5. san juu yon sai  | _____ | 10. issai       | _____ |

☐ **Question and answer 1**

Answer the following question in Japanese.

1. Nansai desu ka.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. (O)namae wa nan desu ka.

\_\_\_\_\_

## ❑ Question and answer 2

For each of the pictures below answer the question:

Nansai ni miemasu ka.

1.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3.

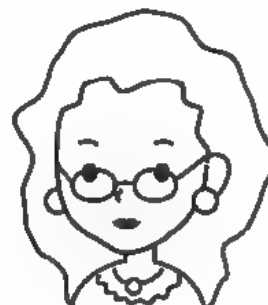


Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4.

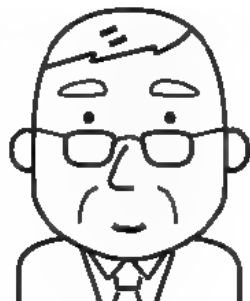
4.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

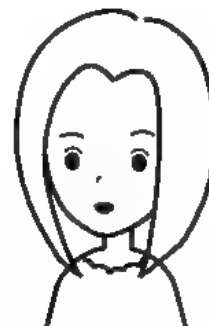
5.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Pre-Lesson

**D**

Level ①

**Coming and Going**

Basic greetings and farewells

**D About This Lesson このレッスンについて**

In Japan, there are certain phrases used for coming and going. These phrases change depending on whether the location is your own home, someone else's home, or a place of business.

**D New Phrases あたらしい ことば****□ Daily Greetings**

Try to use the new phrases below every day with your friends and family.

**1. Ohayou gozaimasu. / Ohayou.****Good morning.**

The short version of *ohayou gozaimasu* is *ohayou* and is normally only used with friends, family and people you have a casual relationship with.

**2. Konnichiwa.****Good afternoon.**

The sound of the double consonant 'nn' in *konnichiwa* is held longer than just one "n".

**3. Konbanwa.****Good evening.**

This is only used when you first meet with someone in the evening. It cannot be used at the end of an evening.

**4. Oyasuminasai. / Oyasumi.****Good night.**

The short version, *oyasumi*, should only be used with friends, family and people you have a casual relationship with.

**5. Arigatou gozaimasu. / Arigatou.****Thank you.**

*Arigatou* is very common as a short way to say "Thank you". In real life, you will rarely hear the often-taught version *Doumo arigatou gozaimasu*



## ❑ Leaving and returning home

The following phrases are said everyday by millions of Japanese people as they leave and arrive home.

### 1. *itte kimasu.*

**I will go and come back. / I'll be back.**

This phrase is said when you leave your home. It can also be said when you are leaving any place to which you plan to return.

### 2. *itterasshai.*

**Have a good day. / Take care. / See you.**

This is the response to *itte kimasu*. This phrase is said to someone who is leaving and will be back. *itterasshai* is normally only used in situations when the person leaving will return in a relatively short time.

### 3. *Tadaima.*

**I'm home. / I'm back.**

This phrase is commonly used when arriving home. It can also be used when returning to a place you recently left.

### 4. *Okaerinasai.*

**Welcome back home.**

This is the response to *tadaima*. It can also be said to someone who has just returned to a place they have been before.

#### Conversation 1: Leaving home

The following conversation is between Jiro and his mother as Jiro leaves to go to school.

**Jiro:** *itte kimasu!*

**Jiro's mother:** *itterasshai!*

#### Conversation 2: Returning home

The following conversation is between Jiro and his mother as Jiro arrives back home from school.

**Jiro:** *Tadaima!*

**Jiro's mother:** *Okaerinasai!*

## D Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

### □ The silent "U" sound

Many phrases taught in this lesson end with "masu".

#### Examples

1. Ohayou gozaimasu.
2. itte kimasu.
3. Arigatou gozaimasu.

In everyday spoken Japanese, the final "u" in words containing "masu" is silent and the word is pronounced as "mas". Practice your words and phrases with this pronunciation and you will sound more natural.

## D Lesson Activities

### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

|                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| 1                                 |
| <b>Mari:</b> itte kimasu.         |
| <b>Mari's mother:</b> itterashai. |
| Mari:                             |
| Mari's mother:                    |

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| 2.                                  |
| <b>Kenji:</b> Tadaima.              |
| <b>Kenji's father:</b> Okaerinasai. |
| Kenji:                              |
| Kenji's father:                     |

## Vocabulary Groups

During your studies you will soon realize that grammar points aren't so easily forgotten. But you need more than grammar to speak effectively – you need vocabulary too!

Throughout this book we will introduce groups of words that are important to everyday Japanese speaking. You don't have to try to memorize them all at once. Just familiarize yourself with each group since they will be showing up in subsequent lessons.

### □ Explanation of Progressive, Kana and Kanji

When new words are introduced, multiple Japanese versions of each word will be introduced. This will make it easier to review once you know how to read more Japanese.

**Progressive** – As you learn hiragana throughout each lesson, the progressive version will slowly replace the English alphabet with hiragana that you have learned.

**Kana** – This version will be either Hiragana or Katakana characters depending on how the word is normally written in Japanese. Hiragana and Katakana are collectively referred to as Kana.

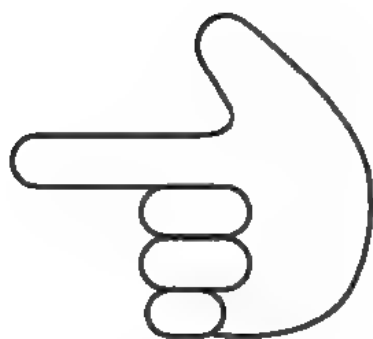
**Kanji** – When a word is normally written in Kanji, it will be displayed here. If there is no Kanji for that word, then the Kana version will be repeated.

## A the body

| Progressive | Kana | Kanji | English      |
|-------------|------|-------|--------------|
| kuchi       | くち   | 口     | mouth        |
| me          | め    | 目     | eye          |
| mimi        | みみ   | 耳     | ear          |
| hana        | はな   | 鼻     | nose         |
| kao         | かお   | 顔     | face         |
| te          | て    | 手     | hand         |
| ashi        | あし   | 足     | foot; leg    |
| yubi        | ゆび   | 指     | finger       |
| atama       | あたま  | 頭     | head         |
| ha          | は    | 歯     | tooth, teeth |

**B** bed and bath

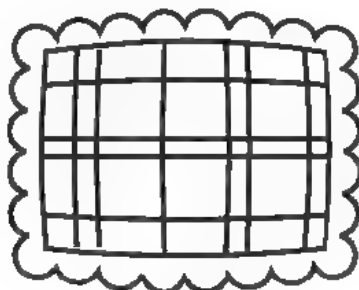
| Progressive | Kana | Kanji | English    |
|-------------|------|-------|------------|
| makura      | まくら  | 枕     | pillow     |
| beddo       | ベッド  | ベッド   | bed        |
| futon       | ふとん  | 布団    | futon      |
| moufu       | もうふ  | 毛布    | blanket    |
| taoru       | タオル  | タオル   | towel      |
| ofuro       | おふろ  | お風呂   | bath       |
| sekken      | せっけん | 石けん   | soap       |
| haburashi   | ハブラシ | 歯ブラシ  | toothbrush |
| kagami      | かがみ  | 鏡     | mirror     |
| mado        | まど   | 窓     | window     |



ゆび



せっけん



まくら



タオル

## Lesson

## 1

Level ①

## Creating Simple Sentences

What is it?



## 1 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

## Before The Lesson

1. Review vocabulary groups A and B.
2. Make sure you understand the basics of Japanese pronunciation from Pre-Lesson A.

## Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to ask and answer simple questions
2. Learn the question particle *ka*

## From The Teachers

1. Remember the phrase *nani desu ka* (What is it?) and understand how *desu* is used.

## 1 New Words あたらしい ことば

| Progressive       | Kana | Kanji | English              |
|-------------------|------|-------|----------------------|
| nani              | なに   | 何     | What?                |
| hai               | はい   | はい    | yes                  |
| iie *             | いいえ  | いいえ   | no                   |
| inu               | いぬ   | 犬     | dog                  |
| neko              | ねこ   | 猫     | cat                  |
| ~san (after name) | さん   | さん    | Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss |
| Tanaka            | たなか  | 田中    | (a common last name) |
| Kobayashi         | こばやし | 小林    | (a common last name) |

\* **NOTE:** In this book, *iie* and other Japanese words that start with "i" will be typed in lowercase to avoid confusion with lowercase "L".

## 1 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

Each lesson will have several new phrases. At this point, don't worry about the grammar; simply memorizing the phrases will be more beneficial at this point.

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Do you understand?                    | Wakarimasu ka.              |
| 2. Yes, I understand.                    | Hai, wakarimasu.            |
| 3. No, I don't understand.               | iie, wakarimasen.           |
| 4. I don't understand. / I don't know. * | Wakarimasen.                |
| 5. Please say it once again.             | Mou ichido itte kudasai.    |
| 6. Please speak more slowly.             | Motto yukkuri itte kudasai. |

\* **NOTE:** Although *wakarimasen* means "I don't understand," it is frequently used to mean "I don't know."

## 1 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Plurals

The Japanese language does not have plurals like English does. For example, *mimi* means "ear" or "ears," depending on the context of the sentence. Later you will learn that some words have plural forms, but for now remember that most words can be either plural or singular without any modification.

### □ Using *desu* to make a simple statement

*Desu* (usually pronounced "des"), depending on the context, can mean: "it is," "this is," "they are," "these are," "I am," "you are," "he is," "she is" and "we are." It is always placed at the end of a sentence. Look at these examples to see how *desu* is used:

[word] + *desu*

#### Example Sentences

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <u>It is</u> a pillow.       | Makura <u>desu</u> .        |
| 2. <u>I am</u> Tanaka.          | Tanaka <u>desu</u> .        |
| 3. <u>She is</u> Ms. Kobayashi. | Kobayashi san <u>desu</u> . |
| 4. It is soap.                  | Sekken <u>desu</u> .        |

## ❑ Making a question using *ka*

*Ka* is like the English question mark. To change a statement in Japanese to a question, you just add *ka* at the end.

[word] + *desu ka*

### Example Sentences

- |                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Is it a pillow?       | Makura <i>desu ka</i> .        |
| 2. Are you Tanaka?       | Tanaka <i>san desu ka</i> .    |
| 3. Is she Ms. Kobayashi? | Kobayashi <i>san desu ka</i> . |
| 4. Is it soap?           | Sekken <i>desu ka</i> .        |

## ❑ The question word *nani*

The question word *nani* or *nan* means “what.” The two versions are used differently. *Nani* can stand alone to simply mean “What?” *Nan* cannot be used alone. It is always used with other words such as *desu*, as in the sentence “*Nan desu ka*” (“What is it?”).

### Example Sentences

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. <u>Nan</u> <i>desu ka</i> .            | What is it?       |
| 2. <u>Nansai</u> <i>desu ka</i> .         | How old are you?  |
| 3. <u>Nani</u> <i>iro desu ka</i> . *     | What color is it? |
| 4. <u>Nani</u> <i>ga suki desu ka</i> . * | What do you like? |

\* **NOTE:** The grammar used in the example sentences 3 and 4 above using *nani* will be taught in later lessons. In the mean time, simply remember that you will see both *NAN* and *NANI* to mean “what”.

## 1 Culture Clip: Using *san* for Mr., Mrs., etc.

It is a custom in Japan to add *san* to the end of someone’s name. *San* means “Mr.,” “Ms.,” “Mrs.,” and “Miss,” and can be used on first or last names. It is considered rude not to use *san*, especially when talking to or about someone you are not close to, or to someone who is older or above you in status. You should never use *san* when referring to yourself or someone in your own family.



**1 Q&A しつもと こたえ****1. What is it?**

It is a pillow.

It is soap.

I don't know.

**Nan desu ka.**

Makura desu.

Sekken desu.

Wakarimasen.

**2. Is it (this) a mirror?**

Yes, it is a mirror.

No, it is a window.

**Kagami desu ka.**

Hai, kagami desu.

iie, mado desu.

**3. Is (this) a bed?**

No, it is a futon.

Yes, it is a bed.

**Beddo desu ka.**

iie, futon desu.

Hai, beddo desu.

**4. Is he Mr. Tanaka?**

Yes, he is Mr. Tanaka.

No, he is Mr. Kobayashi.

**Tanaka san desu ka.**

Hai, Tanaka san desu.

iie, Kobayashi san desu.

**5. Is it a head?**

No, it is a face.

Yes, it is a head.

I don't know

**Atama desu ka.**

iie, kao desu.

Hai, atama desu.

Wakarimasen.

**6. Do you understand?**

No, I don't understand.

Yes, I understand.

No.

**Wakarimasu ka.**

iie, wakarimasen.

Hai, wakarimasu.

iie.

**7. What is it?**

It is a hand.

It is a foot.

It is a finger.

It is a toothbrush.

**Nan desu ka.**

Te desu.

Ashi desu.

Yubi desu.

Haburashi desu.

**8. Is she Ms. Kobayashi?**

I don't know

No, she is Ms. Tanaka.

Yes, she is Ms. Kobayashi.

**Kobayashi san desu ka.**

Wakarimasen.

iie, Tanaka san desu.

Hai, Kobayashi san desu.

## Hiragana あいうえお

### あ The goal ゴール

When you complete *Japanese From Zero!* you will be able to read and write all of the symbols shown below. This chart is read in traditional Japanese-style, from right-to-left and top-to-bottom.

Read right-to-left and top-to-bottom

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |          |         |          |         |         |        |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|----------|---------|----------|---------|---------|--------|
| わ<br>wa | ら<br>ra | や<br>ya | ま<br>ma | ぱ<br>pa | ば<br>ba | は<br>ha | な<br>na | だ<br>da | た<br>ta  | ざ<br>za | さ<br>sa  | が<br>ga | か<br>ka | あ<br>a |
|         | り<br>ri |         | み<br>mi | ぴ<br>pi | び<br>bi | ひ<br>hi | に<br>ni | ぢ<br>ji | ち<br>chi | じ<br>ji | し<br>shi | ぎ<br>gi | き<br>ki | い<br>i |
| を<br>wo | る<br>ru | ゆ<br>yu | む<br>mu | ぷ<br>pu | ぶ<br>bu | ふ<br>fu | ぬ<br>nu | づ<br>zu | つ<br>tsu | ず<br>zu | す<br>su  | ぐ<br>gu | く<br>ku | う<br>u |
|         | れ<br>re |         | め<br>me | ぺ<br>pe | べ<br>be | へ<br>he | ね<br>ne | で<br>de | て<br>te  | ぜ<br>ze | せ<br>se  | げ<br>ge | け<br>ke | え<br>e |
| ん<br>n  | ろ<br>ro | よ<br>yo | も<br>mo | ぽ<br>po | ぼ<br>bo | ほ<br>ho | の<br>no | ど<br>do | と<br>to  | ぞ<br>zo | そ<br>so  | ご<br>go | こ<br>ko | お<br>o |

### あ How this book works

*Japanese From Zero!* uses *Japanese From Zero's* PROGRESSIVE SYSTEM of teaching hiragana. As you learn new hiragana, we will immediately replace the roman letters (ro-maji) with the hiragana you have just learned. For example, after you learn あ (which sounds like "ah") we will mix it into the example words.

| English | Before this lesson | After this lesson | Complete hiragana |
|---------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| you     | anata              | あ nata            | あなた               |
| dog     | inu                | い nu              | いぬ                |
| house   | ie                 | いえ                | いえ                |
| mother  | okaasan            | お ka あ san        | おかあさん             |

**あ Some History れきし**

Hiragana was created by a Buddhist monk over 1200 years ago (AD 774-835). At that time it was believed that women were not allowed to learn the very intricate kanji. After hiragana was introduced to women, they were able to express themselves in the written form. It is due to hiragana that women authored many of the first published works in Japan.

**Hiragana character samples**

あかさたなはまやらわん

Katakana was created by using portions of kanji, while the more rounded hiragana was created by simplifying kanji. Children in Japan learn hiragana first, then katakana, and finally kanji. Hiragana, with only 47 unique characters, can represent the entire Japanese language.

**Katakana character samples**

アカサタナハマヤラワン

Kanji, on the other hand, consists of over 10,000 characters. In 1981 the Japanese Ministry of Education announced 1,945 commonly used kanji called the *Joyou Kanji*. By the 6th grade, the average Japanese student knows half of the *Joyou Kanji*. Since this time more Kanji have been deemed necessary to learn and have been added to the *Joyou Kanji* list.

**Kanji character samples**

安加左太奈波末也良和毛

## あ Writing Basics かくときの きほん

### ❑ What is a stroke?

A stroke begins when the pen (or any other writing device) comes in contact with the paper. The stroke ends when the pen separates from the paper.

### ❑ Why use brushes to write?

Traditionally, Japanese was written with brushes. This book – and almost any book that teaches Japanese writing – uses the brush-written style for the Japanese characters. The brush-written style best represents how the characters should be written.

### ❑ Different types of brush strokes

There are three types of strokes. For ease of understanding we have named them *fade out*, *dead stop* and *bounce fade*. Whether writing with a brush, pen, or pencil, make sure that you pay attention to the stroke type. This will ensure that your writing is neat and proper.



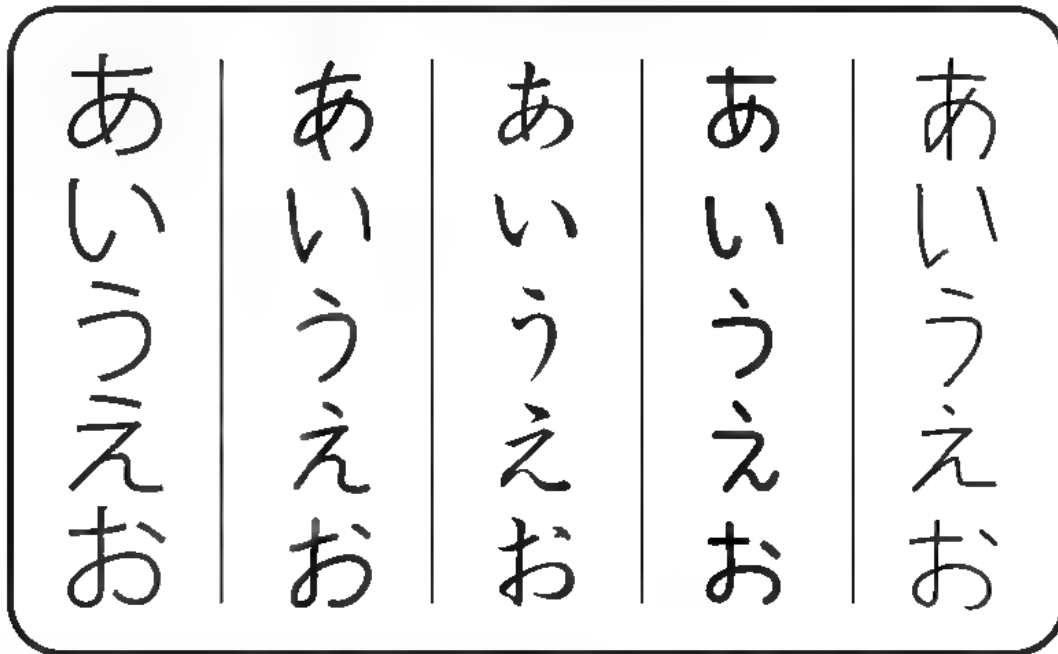
## あ New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

The first five hiragana to learn are listed below. Notice the different stroke types. Make sure you learn the correct stroke order and stroke type.

| A                    | I                 | U                 | E                 | O                  |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| あ                    | い                 | う                 | え                 | お                  |
| as in <u>f</u> ather | as in <u>s</u> ee | as in <u>z</u> oo | as in <u>m</u> en | as in <u>b</u> oat |

## あ Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



### □ The importance of the various styles


It is important to always study the different styles of each character in the Various Styles section of the lessons to see what is allowed when writing. Remember that there are small differences between how the characters will look when writing with a brush and writing with a pen or pencil.

## あ Writing Points かくポイント


### □ The difference between あ (a) and お (o)

Be careful not to mix up あ and お. The second stroke of あ is curved while the second stroke for お is straight until the loop.

more curved  
than お and  
not connected  
to the loop.

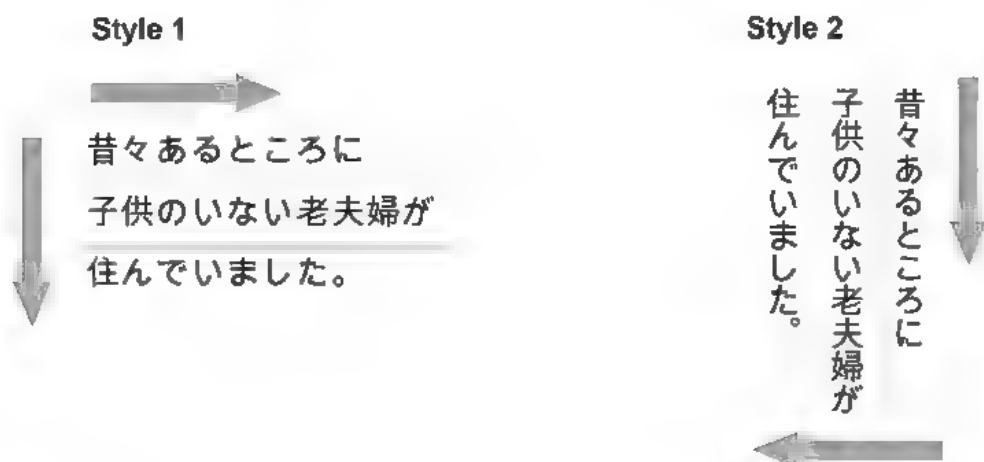


straighter  
than あ and  
connected to  
the loop.



## □ Writing left-to-right and top-to-bottom

Before World War II, Japanese publications were written with each line going from top to bottom as shown in style 2 below. In modern Japan, both styles are common. Many times the style used is based solely on design choice, and in some cases (such as writing an e-mail) only style 1 is possible. Many Japanese writing books for children will use style 2. Even though *Japanese From Zero!* contains only style 1, both styles are acceptable.



## あ Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|   |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| a | あ | あ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| i | い | い |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| u | う | う |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| e | え | え |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| o | お | お |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## あ Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. \_\_\_\_ka\_\_\_\_san (mother)  
o a

2. \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ (house)  
i e

3. \_\_\_\_to\_\_\_\_san (father)  
o u

4. \_\_\_\_ka\_\_\_\_ (red)  
a i

5. \_\_\_\_mo\_\_\_\_to (younger sister)  
i u

6. ka\_\_\_\_ (to buy)  
u

7. \_\_\_\_sagi (rabbit)  
u

8. \_\_\_\_npitsu (pencil)  
e

9. \_\_\_\_ne\_\_\_\_san (older sister)  
o e

10. \_\_\_\_moshiro\_\_\_\_ (interesting)  
o i

11. \_\_\_\_su (chair)  
i

12. \_\_\_\_kiru (to wake up)  
o

## あ Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

え

(a painting)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いい

(good)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

おい

(nephew)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あい  
(love)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

えい  
(a ray fish)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いいえ  
(no)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

おい  
(many)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あう  
(to meet)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

うえ  
(up)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いう  
(to say)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いえ  
(house)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あお  
(blue)

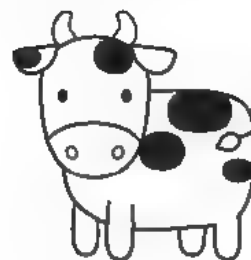
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**あ****Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば**

あ kachan  
baby



い nu  
dog



う shi  
cow

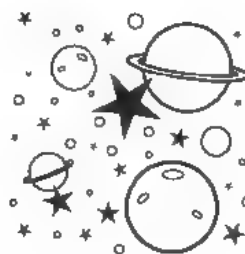




ka え ru  
frog



お koru  
to get mad



う chu う  
space

### あ Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

お ・

・ a

う ・

・ o

え ・

・ u

い ・

・ e

あ ・

・ i

# 1 Lesson Activities

## ❑ Question and answer

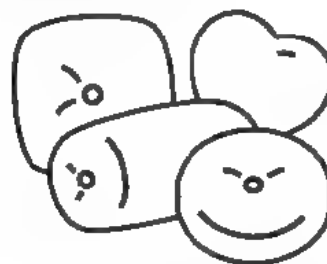
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures. You can check your answers in the answer key for this lesson.

1. Nan desu ka?



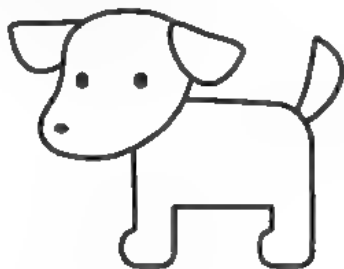
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Taoru desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Nan desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Hana desu ka?



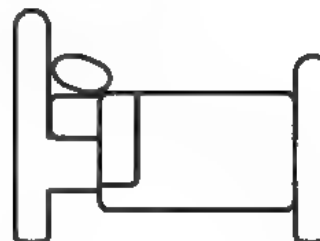
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

5. Tanaka san desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

6. Nan desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

### ❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

|                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1.                    |                               |
| <b>Tanaka san:</b>    | Nan desu ka. Mo う fu desu ka. |
| <b>Kobayashi san:</b> | Mo う い chido い tte kudasa い.  |
| <b>Tanaka san:</b>    | Mo う fu desu ka.              |
| <b>Kobayashi san:</b> | いいえ, taoru desu.              |
| Tanaka san:           |                               |
| Kobayashi san:        |                               |
| Tanaka san:           |                               |
| Kobayashi san:        |                               |

### ❑ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

|                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1.              |                                   |
| <b>Kouichi:</b> | Are you Masumi?                   |
| <b>Yasuko:</b>  | No, I am Yasuko. Are you Yuusuke? |
| <b>Kouichi:</b> | No, I am Kouichi.                 |
| Kouichi:        |                                   |
| Masumi:         |                                   |
| Kouichi:        |                                   |

### ❑ What would you say?

What would you say in the following situations? Write the answer in Japanese.

1. When you want someone to repeat what they said:

---

2. When you meet someone for the first time:

---

3. When you want someone to guess your age:

---

4. When you ask someone if he is Mr. Nakamura:

---

5. When you ask someone to speak slower:

---

## 1 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you know what they mean, congratulations! You're already learning Japanese! If you don't know what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Nan desu ka.    | 5. Makura desu ka. |
| 2. Wakarimasu ka   | 6. いいえ、neko desu.  |
| 3. はい, wakarimasu. | 7. Wakarimasen.    |
| 4. はい nu desu ka.  | 8. Hajimemashite.  |

## 1 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

**Nan desu ka.**  
**What is it?**

Lesson

## 2

Level ①

## Working with a Topic

Which one?



## 2 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

## Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read あいうえお.
2. Understand how to use *desu* and the particle *ka*.

## Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to work with a topic in simple sentences.
2. Learn how to use the topic marker *wa*.

## From The Teachers

1. Remember the phrases “Dore desu ka” and “Docchi desu ka”
2. Memorize the **ko so a do** pattern. It’ll come in handy later.

## 2 New Words あたらしい ことば

## Progressive

## Kana

## Kanji

## English

dore

どれ

どれ

which one (three or more)

kore

これ

これ

this one

sore

それ

それ

that one

あ re

あれ

あれ

that one over there

docchi

どっち

どっち

which one (two items)

kocchi

こっち

こっち

this one

socchi

そっち

そっち

that one

あ cchi

あっち

あっち

that one over there

retasu

レタス

レタス

lettuce

banana

バナナ

バナナ

banana

yasa i

やさい

野菜

vegetable

furu-tsu

フルーツ

フルーツ

fruit

|            |         |         |          |
|------------|---------|---------|----------|
| kudamono   | くだもの    | 果物      | fruit    |
| sushi      | すし      | 寿司      | sushi    |
| pen        | ペン      | ペン      | pen      |
| kuruma     | くるま     | 車       | car      |
| konpyu-ta- | コンピューター | コンピューター | computer |
| hon        | ほん      | 本       | book     |
| zasshi     | ざっし     | 雑誌      | magazine |

## 2 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

At this point, don't worry about the grammar of the New Phrases; simply memorizing the phrases will be more beneficial at this point.

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Can you speak Japanese? | Nihongo ga hanasemasu ka.     |
| 2. Can you speak English?  | えい go ga hanasemasu ka.       |
| 3. A little.               | Sukoshi                       |
| 4. Not at all.             | Zenzen.                       |
| 5. I am studying Japanese. | Nihongo o benkyou shiteimasu. |

## 2 Culture Clip: Sushi and Sashimi

Many foreigners to Japan don't know the difference between sushi and sashimi. Sushi is raw or cooked fish, eggs, or vegetables on rice. It is placed on top of a fist-full of rice, and normally between the fish and rice there is some *wasabi*. *Wasabi* is a Japanese horseradish. It is very pungent. Sashimi is just sliced raw fish. (Try it – you might like it!)



**Sushi is raw  
fish on rice**



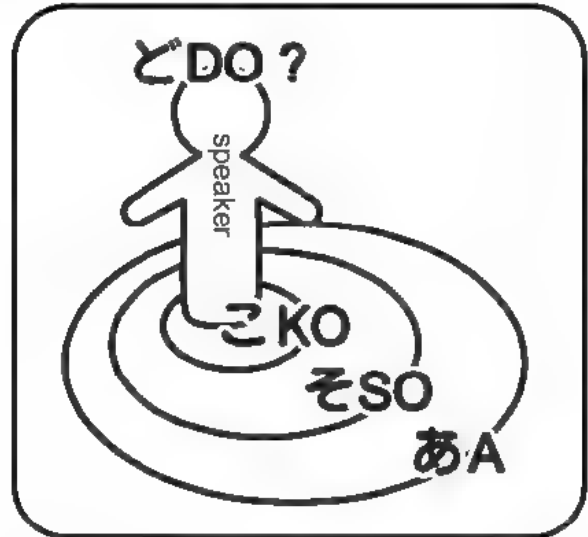
**Sashimi is sliced  
raw fish**

## 2 Cool Tools クール・ツール

In Japanese, there is a pattern of words that comes up many times. It is the **ko so a do** pattern. In this lesson there are two **ko so a do** patterns: kore, sore, are, dore, and kocchi, socchi, acchi, docchi. Notice that each word starts with *ko~*, *so~*, *a~* or *do~*. The following chart shows the distance relation of these words to the speaker.

Since the four words in a *ko-so-a-do* group are similar in sound, they are easy to mix up. The diagram on the right will help you remember the relation of each word in the group to the speaker. Remember this diagram, because there are more *ko-so-a-do* groups coming up.

- ko** – Close enough to touch
- so** – Sort of close, but not enough to touch
- a** – In the distance. Definitely not close.
- do** – Question word.



## 2 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The topic marker *wa*

The particle *wa* is used to mark the topic of the sentence. It can be thought to mean, "Speaking of (the) ~," or "As for (the) ~," but it does not have any meaning in English. Generally, everything that comes before *wa* is the topic or part of the topic. Everything after the *wa* describes or asks a question about the topic.

[topic] + *wa* + [question or description]

| Sentence Structure ぶんけい           |        |    |
|-----------------------------------|--------|----|
| Tomorrow                          | Monday | is |
| あshita <b>wa</b> getsuyoūbi desu. |        |    |
| Tomorrow is Monday.               |        |    |
| topic marker                      |        |    |

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| <p>Yukari Japanese is</p> <p>Yukari-san <b>wa</b> nihonjin desu.</p> <p>topic marker</p> | <p>Yukari is Japanese.</p> |
| <p>Bananas yellow are</p> <p>Banana <b>wa</b> kiiro desu.</p> <p>topic marker</p>        | <p>Bananas are yellow.</p> |

### ❑ Using *wa* in a variety of sentences

Remember that *wa* is used to mark the topic of a sentence. Read the examples to see how *wa* can be applied to the words that you already know. Don't forget that the word before the *wa* is the topic, and everything after *wa* is asking a question about or describing the topic.

#### Example Q&A

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kore <u>wa</u> nan desu ka.<br>Sore <u>wa</u> kagami desu.                             | What is this?<br>That is a mirror.                              |
| 2. Sore <u>wa</u> nan desu ka.<br>Sore <u>wa</u> pen desu.<br>あ re <u>wa</u> banana desu. | What is that?<br>That is a pen.<br>That over there is a banana. |
| 3. Kore <u>wa</u> yasa i desu ka.<br>いいえ、sore <u>wa</u> furu-tsu desu.                    | Is this a vegetable?<br>No, that is a fruit.                    |
| 4. Banana wa nan desu ka.<br>Banana <u>wa</u> furu-tsu desu.                              | What is a banana?<br>A banana is a fruit.                       |
| 5. Retasu <u>wa</u> furu-tsu desu ka.<br>いいえ、retasu <u>wa</u> yasa i desu.                | Is lettuce a fruit?<br>No, lettuce is a vegetable.              |



## ❑ The question words *dore* and *docchi*

*Dore* and *docchi* both mean “which one?” *Dore* is used with groups of three or more. If there are only two items, *docchi* is used.

**[topic] + wa dore desu ka**  
**[topic] + wa docchi desu ka**  
**Which one is the/a [topic]?**

If there are three or more items, *dore* is used.

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Kuruma wa dore desu ka.   | Which one is the car?     |
| 2. Furu-tsu wa dore desu ka. | Which one is a fruit?     |
| 3. Yasa い wa dore desu ka.   | Which one is a vegetable? |

If there are only two items, *docchi* is used.

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Kuruma wa docchi desu ka.   | Which one is the car?     |
| 2. Furu-tsu wa docchi desu ka. | Which one is a fruit?     |
| 3. Yasa い wa docchi desu ka.   | Which one is a vegetable? |

## ❑ Following the same pattern when answering

Notice that the answers and the questions in the example Q&A below follow the same sentence pattern. When answering questions, remember that *90% of the answer is in the question*.

Also, when the question has *~cchi* in it, the answer should not change to *~re*. Try to keep response sentences in the same format as their question sentences.

### Example Q&A

|           |        |    |      |       |     |                      |
|-----------|--------|----|------|-------|-----|----------------------|
| Question: | Kuruma | wa | dore | desu  | ka. | Which one is a car?  |
| Answer:   | Kuruma | wa | kore | desu. |     | The car is this one. |

|           |        |    |          |       |     |                      |
|-----------|--------|----|----------|-------|-----|----------------------|
| Question: | Banana | wa | nan      | desu  | ka. | What is a banana?    |
| Answer:   | Banana | wa | furu-tsu | desu. |     | A banana is a fruit. |

|           |        |    |      |       |     |                        |
|-----------|--------|----|------|-------|-----|------------------------|
| Question: | Kagami | wa | dore | desu  | ka. | Which one is a mirror? |
| Answer:   | Kagami | wa | sore | desu. |     | That one is a mirror.  |

|           |      |    |        |       |    |                                  |
|-----------|------|----|--------|-------|----|----------------------------------|
| Question: | Mado | wa | docchi | desu  | ka | Which one is a window?           |
| Answer:   | Mado | wa | あ cchi | desu. |    | That one over there is a window. |

### ❑ Using what you know to learn more

If you don't know a word, use the Japanese you know to ask someone what the word is. You can use the following sentence to ask what something is. For example, let's say that you don't know what えんぴす means:

#### Examples

- えんぴす wa nan desu ka?  
What is "enpitsu"?
- えんぴす wa pencil desu.  
Enpitsu is a pencil.

## 2 Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

### ❑ Dropping the topic of a sentence

It's very common in Japanese to drop the topic of a conversation once it has been introduced. In English, we constantly restate the topic directly or use "he", "she", "they" as a substitute. Spoken Japanese is much more like a match of tennis.

In Japanese, a topic is served and then discussed back and forth. Normally a topic is not mentioned again until a new topic is served.

To illustrate this, look at the following statements about my friend Michiko:

- My friend is Michiko.
- She lives in Japan.
- She is 18 years old.
- She is a college student.

In English, the topic "My friend" is introduced in the first sentence. Then in each following sentence, "she" is used to continually restate the topic. In Japanese, it's more natural to not say "she" over and over again. Instead, what would be considered incomplete sentences in English are used. This makes for much more natural conversation.

The English equivalent if spoken in Japanese would look like this:

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. My friend is Michiko. | Watashi no tomodachi wa Michiko san desu. |
| 2. Lives in Japan.       | Nihon ni sunde います.                       |
| 3. Is 18 years old       | Ju うち hassa います.                          |
| 4. Is a college student. | Da います gakuse います.                        |

As you read the example Q&A in the next section, look for places where the topic is NOT repeated.

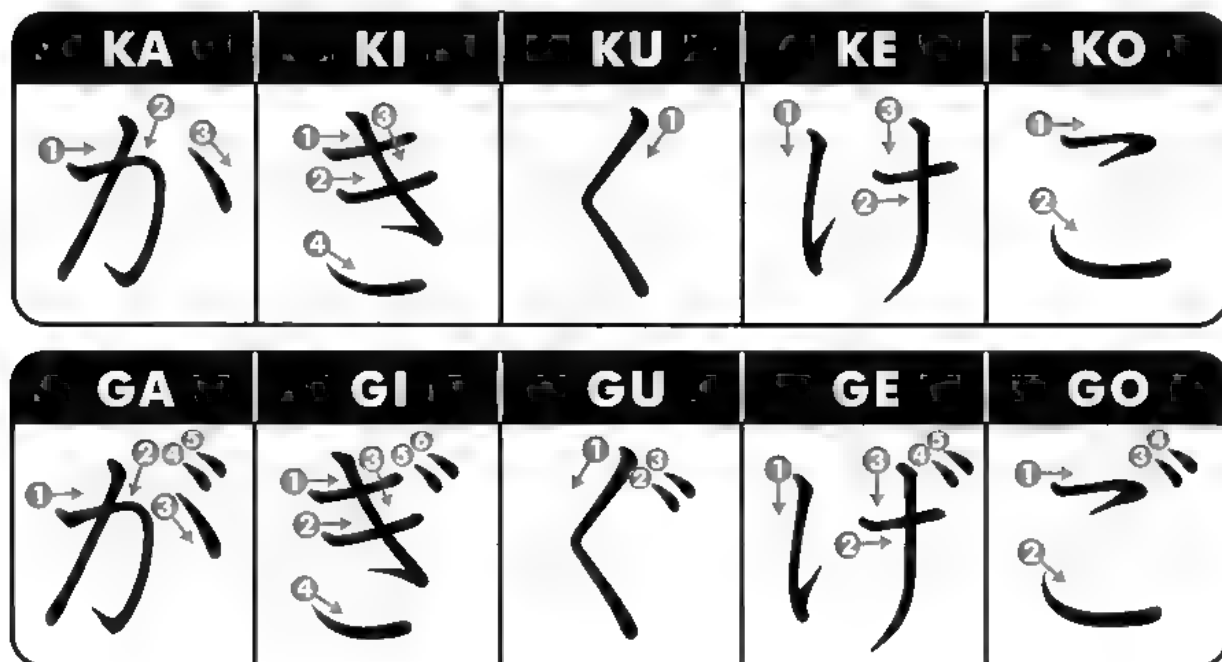
## 2 Q&A しつもと ことえ E→J

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Which one is it? (four items)<br>It is this one<br>It is that one<br>It is that one over there. | Dore desu ka.<br>Kore desu.<br>Sore desu.<br>あ re desu.  |
| 2. What is this?<br>This is a pillow<br>This is a computer.<br>It's a blanket.                     | Kore wa nan desu ka.<br>Kore wa makura desu.<br>Kore wa konpyu-ta- desu.<br>Mo う fu desu.          |
| 3. Is this a vegetable?<br>Yes, it's a vegetable.<br>No, it's a fruit<br>Yes, it's lettuce.        | Kore wa yasa います desu ka.<br>Ha います, yasa います desu.<br>いいえ, furu-tsu desu.<br>Ha います, retasu desu. |
| 4. Which one a vegetable? (two items)<br>This one is.<br>That one is.<br>I don't know              | Yasa います wa docchi desu ka.<br>Kocchi desu.<br>Socchi desu.<br>Wakarimasen.                        |
| 5. What is that?<br>That is soap.<br>This is a towel.<br>It's a futon.                             | Sore wa nan desu ka.<br>Sore wa sekken desu.<br>Kore wa taoru desu.<br>Futon desu.                 |

## Hiragana かきくけこ

### か New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



### か Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| か | か | か | か | か |
| き | き | き | き | き |
| く | く | く | く | く |
| け | け | け | け | け |
| こ | こ | こ | こ | こ |

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| が | が | が | が | が |
| ぎ | ぎ | ぎ | ぎ | ぎ |
| ぐ | ぐ | ぐ | ぐ | ぐ |
| げ | げ | げ | げ | げ |
| ご | ご | ご | ご | ご |

## か Writing Points かくポイント

### ❑ The dakuten

The only difference between *ka ki ku ke ko* and *ga gi gu ge go* are the last two small strokes up in the right hand corner. Those strokes are called *dakuten*. You will see them often in future lessons.

### ❑ Writing が (ga) the correct way

When adding *dakuten* to か (ka) to make it が (ga), make sure that they are shorter than the third stroke. The third stroke of が should always be longer than the *dakuten*.

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| か | INCORRECT |
| か | INCORRECT |
| が | CORRECT   |

### ❑ The different versions of き (ki)

You may have noticed in the *Various Styles* section of this lesson that there are two versions of *ki*. It is your choice which version you use. You will see both versions in Japan.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| き | This version has four strokes and is very common when writing. Many Japanese people write using this version.                          |
| き | This version has combined the third and fourth strokes into one stroke. It is very common in printed text such as books and magazines. |

**か** Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ka | か | か |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ki | き | き |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ku | く | く |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ke | け | け |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ko | こ | こ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ga | が | が |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| gi | ぎ | ぎ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| gu | ぐ | ぐ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ge | げ | げ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| go | ご | ご |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## か Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1.     い ro (yellow)  
ki

2.           (to listen)  
ki ku

3.     minari (lightning)  
ka

4.     う     n (air force)  
ku gu

5.           (moss)  
ko ke

6. い      (to go)  
ku

7.     mushi (caterpillar)  
ke

8.     う     う (airport)  
ku ko

9.     n い ro (silver color)  
gi

10.     n'ni      (muscle)  
ki ku

11.           (afternoon)  
go go

12.     お ri (ice)  
ko

## か Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

き  
(tree)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かく  
(to write)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いか  
(squid)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かぎ  
(key)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かお  
(face)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かい  
(shell)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あか  
(red)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ごご  
(afternoon)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

がいこく  
(foreign country)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

おおきい  
(big)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

くうこう  
(airport)

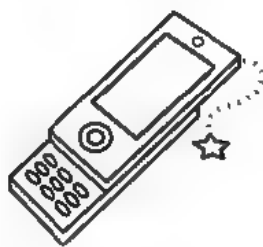
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**か**

## Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



tsu き  
the moon



けい た い denwa  
cell phone



かぎ  
key

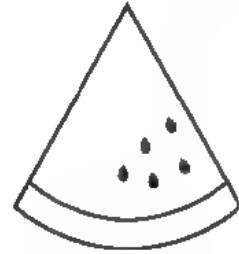




cho き n ba こ  
safe, piggy  
bank



かく  
to write



su いか  
watermelon

## か Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

き ・

・ i

い ・

・ go

く ・

・ ka

か ・

・ ki

え ・

・ ku

ご ・

・ ke

け ・

・ e

## 2 Lesson Activities

### ❑ Question and answer 1

Answer the following questions in Japanese by looking at the pictures.

1. こ re wa nan desu か?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. こ re wa nan desu か?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. こ re wa ka ga mi desu か?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. こ re wa ya sa i desu か?

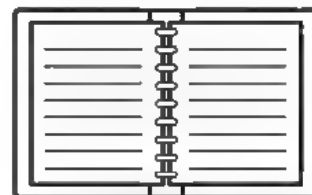


Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

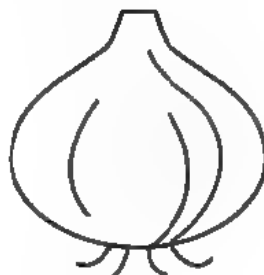
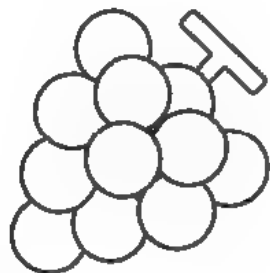
**❑ Question and answer 2**

Circle the correct item and answer with これ *re desu* or それ *cchi desu*.

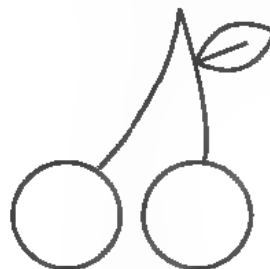
1. Hon wa dore desu か?



2. Yasai wa dore desu か?




3. Furu-tsu wa docchi desu か?



### ❑ Question and answer 3

Fill in the question being asked by the girl (Q:) and the answer given by the woman (A:) in the following pictures. (Write your answers in Japanese)


1.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_


2.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_


3.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

4.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

### ❑ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

|  |
|--|
| 1.   |
| <b>Sato さん:</b> Sore wa hon desu か.                      |
| <b>Sho さん:</b> いいえ, zasshi desu.                         |
| <b>Sato さん:</b> Mo う い chido い tte < dasa い. Nan desu か. |
| <b>Sho さん:</b> こ re wa zasshi desu.                      |
| Sato さん:   |
| Sho さん:  |
| Sato さん:   |
| Sho さん:  |

### ❑ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

|  |
|--|
| 1.   |
| <b>Japanese person:</b> Can you speak Japanese?  |
| <b>American person:</b> A little.                |
| <b>Japanese person:</b> What is that over there? |
| <b>American person:</b> That is a car.           |
| <b>Japanese person:</b> Thank you.               |
| Japanese person:                                 |
| American person:                                 |
| Japanese person:                                 |
| American person:                                 |
| Japanese person:                                 |

## 2 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

- |                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Retasu wa nan desu か。   | 6. Nihon じょ o benkyo う shiteimasu. |
| 2. Hon wa socchi desu.     | 7. あ re wa か が mi desu.            |
| 3. Tada い ma.              | 8. く ruma wa dore desu か。          |
| 4. Rin じ wa furu-tsu desu. | 9. Yasa い desu.                    |
| 5. こ re wa yasa い desu か。  | 10. Nihon じ が hanasemasu か。        |

## 2 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

The sentence from the previous lesson was: Nan desu か。 (What is it?). In this lesson we learned how to attach a topic to the question. Let's look at the new sentence:

こ re wa nan desu か。  
What is this?

## Vocabulary Groups

### C family

#### Progressive

おかあ san

おとう san

おじい san

おばあ san

あか chan

#### Kana

おかあさん

おとうさん

おじいさん

おばあさん

あかちゃん

#### Kanji

お母さん

お父さん

おじいさん

おばあさん

赤ちゃん

#### English

mother

father

grandfather

grandmother

baby

### D greetings and farewells

#### Progressive

あ り が とう

お hayo う ご za い masu

お yasuminasa い

こ nnichiwa

sayo う nara

#### Kana

ありがとう

おはよう ございます

おやすみなさい

こんにちば

さようなら

#### Kanji

ありがとう

おはよう ございます

お休みなさい

今日は

さようなら

#### English

thank you, thanks

good morning

good night

good afternoon

good bye, farewell



おとうさん



おはよう ございます



おかあさん

Lesson

3

Level ①

**Possession**

Whose is this?

**3 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read かきくけこ, がぎぐげこ
2. Understand how to use the question words *dore* and *docchi* and the topic marker *wa*
3. Review vocabulary groups C and D.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn to show possession using the particle *no*
2. Learn how to use the subject marker *が*

**From The Teachers**

1. It's common to mix up *dare* (who) and *dore* (which one). It's also common to mix up *watashi* (me) and *あ* *nata* (you). Try to avoid these mistakes.

**3 New Words あたらしい ことば**

| Progressive | Hiragana | Kanji | English                |
|-------------|----------|-------|------------------------|
| dare        | だれ       | 誰     | who?                   |
| watashi     | わたし      | 私     | I, me (male or female) |
| bo く        | ぼく       | 僕     | I, me (males only)     |
| あ nata      | あなた      | 貴方    | you                    |
| か nojo      | かのじょ     | 彼女    | her, she, girlfriend   |
| か re        | かれ       | 彼     | him, he, boyfriend     |
| nama え      | なまえ      | 名前    | name                   |
| tomodachi   | ともだち     | 友達    | friend                 |
| tabun       | たぶん      | 多分    | maybe                  |
| が kko う     | がっこう     | 学校    | school                 |



|                   |           |        |                  |
|-------------------|-----------|--------|------------------|
| tori              | とり        | 鳥      | bird             |
| sensei            | せんせい      | 先生     | teacher          |
| nihongo no sensei | にほんごのせんせい | 日本語の先生 | Japanese teacher |

### 3 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

#### 1. So う desu.

##### That's right.

This phrase is used to affirm that something said is true or correct. It doesn't need to always be translated as "That's right." It can be translated into a variety of similar phrases such as: "You are right," "It is," or even just simply "Yes."

#### 2. Chi が い masu.

##### That's wrong.

This phrase is used when something is false or incorrect. It doesn't always have to be translated as "That's wrong." It can mean a variety of similar phrases such as: "It's different," "It isn't," and "No."

### 3 Culture Clip: Interesting information about bo <



bo <

The word *bo <* means "me" or "I," and normally only males use it. It can be masculine or cute depending on the usage. It should only be used in casual conversation.

Also, when talking to little boys, it is very common to call them *bo <* when their name is not known. For example, if someone is talking to a little boy and you hear them say, "*Bo < wa nansa i desu ka,*" it means "How old are you?" and not "How old am I?"

#### Can girls use *bo <*?

Even though *bo <* is normally a male word, you will hear it in songs sung by female singers. This is sometimes done when the girl is singing from a male perspective or when the girl is trying to sound boyish. Despite this, you will probably never hear a girl use *bo <* in conversation. However, you will often hear young girls say *ai tashi* as an informal and cute way of saying *wata shi*.

### 3 Grammar ぶんぽう

#### □ The question word *dare*

You can use the question word *dare* just as *nan*, *dore* and *docchi* are used.

##### Example Q&A

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Nan</u> desu か。<br>< ruma desu.      | <u>What</u> is it?<br>It is a car.         |
| 2. <u>Dore</u> desu か。<br>Sore desu.       | <u>Which one</u> is it?<br>It is that one. |
| 3. <u>Dare</u> desu か。<br>Tana か san desu. | <u>Who</u> is it?<br>It is Mr. Tanaka.     |

#### □ Using *wa* with *dare*

As we learned in lesson 2, you can specify a topic using the topic marker *wa*. Look at how the new question word *dare* (who) is used.

##### Example Q&A

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>あ</u> nata wa <u>dare</u> desu か。<br>Watashi wa こ bayashi desu. | <u>Who</u> are you?<br>I am Kobayashi.                         |
| 2. か re wa <u>dare</u> desu か。<br>か re wa tomodachi desu.             | <u>Who</u> is he?<br>He is a friend.                           |
| 3. Sense い wa <u>dare</u> desu か。<br>Yamada san desu.                 | <u>Who</u> is the teacher?<br>It's Yamada san.                 |
| 4. Tana か san wa <u>dare</u> desu か。<br>Nihon こ no sense い desu.      | <u>Who</u> is Tanaka san?<br>(She's / He's) a Japanese teacher |

## ❑ Assuming the topic based on context

Japanese conversation relies heavily on the context or "circumstances" of the conversation. Let's look at the sentence **Dare desu か** which in the prior example was translated as "Who is it?". You might have noticed that there isn't any specific topic in this sentence.

It's not uncommon for sentences to lack a topic in Japanese. And as stated in the prior lesson, it isn't natural to continually say "he, she, you, I" in Japanese as we do in English.

Look at how the translation of *Dare desu か* changes depending on the context.

### Example Conversations

1. **Context:** Looking at an unknown person in a photograph.

A: Dare desu か。

Who is this person?

B: Tana か san desu.

It is Mr. Tanaka.

The topic "this person" is assumed and doesn't need to be said.

2. **Context:** Someone you don't know calls you on the phone.

A: Dare desu か。

Who are you?

B: Tana か desu.

It's Tanaka.

You could have added **あ** **nata wa** in front of the question, but the person knows you're speaking directly to him, so the topic can be dropped.

3. **Context:** Looking at a girl in the hallway.

A: Dare desu か。

Who is she?

B: Mayumi desu.

She is Mayumi.

You could have added **か** **nojo wa** in front of both of these sentences, but the conversation would not sound natural. The "she" part of the conversation does not need to be stated since the topic is obvious.

## ❑ Starting sentences with or without question words

In English it's common to start sentences with a question word. Look at the following English sentences that start with question words:

### Example Sentences

1. What is this?
2. Which one is your car?
3. Who are you?

Since it's so common to start sentences in English with a question word, many students of Japanese mistakenly believe you can always do the same thing in Japanese, but this is not the case.

In the following examples you will notice that the Japanese sentences DO NOT start with a question word even though the English sentences do. The question words have been underlined in both sentences.

### Example Sentences

1. こ re wa nan desu か。  
What is this?
2. < ruma wa dore desu か。  
Which one is a car?
3. Tana か san wa dare desu か。  
Who is Tanaka?

## ❑ How to start a sentence with a question word using が

Even though you don't generally start a Japanese sentence with a question word, there are times when this is acceptable or necessary.

When a question word is the topic of the sentence, or when a question word is the FIRST word in a sentence, the topic/subject marker が instead of wa must be used.

However, if the items you are talking about have already been introduced or are in front of you, you can start a sentence with a question word as the topic.

In the following examples, the question words have been underlined in both sentences.

### Example Sentences

1. Dore が < ruma desu か。  
Which one is a car?
2. Dare が Tana か san desu か。  
Who is Tanaka?

Remember that the answer must follow the same pattern as the question, and therefore the answer must also use *が* as the topic/subject marker.

### Example Conversations

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. A: <u>Dore</u> <i>が</i> < ruma desu <i>か</i> 。            | <u>Which one</u> is a car?  |
| B: Sore <i>が</i> < ruma desu.                                | That's a car.               |
| 2. A: <u>Dare</u> <i>が</i> Tana <i>か</i> san desu <i>か</i> 。 | <u>Who/which</u> is Tanaka? |
| B: Tana <i>か</i> san <i>が</i> tomodachi desu.                | Tanaka is a friend.         |

### ❑ Making words possessive with the particle *no*

It is easy to convert words into their possessive form by adding *no* after them.

#### Examples

|       |                         |
|-------|-------------------------|
| mine  | watashi <u>no</u>       |
| mine  | bo < <u>no</u>          |
| yours | あ <u>nata no</u>        |
| hers  | <i>か</i> nojo <u>no</u> |
| his   | <i>か</i> re <u>no</u>   |
| whose | dare <u>no</u>          |

*No* also acts like the possessive *'s* in English when it follows a person's name and other words.

#### Examples

|               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Akiko's       | あきこ <u>no</u>               |
| Jeff's        | Jeffu <u>no</u>             |
| Mr. Tanaka's  | Tana <i>か</i> san <u>no</u> |
| Father's      | お <u>to</u> う san <u>no</u> |
| Mother's      | お <u>ka</u> あ san <u>no</u> |
| Grandfather's | お <u>ji</u> い san <u>no</u> |
| Grandmother's | お <u>ba</u> あ san <u>no</u> |

Using this concept in conversation is easy. If someone asks, **こ re wa dare no desu か** (Whose is this?) as they hold an object in their hand, you can use any of the following answers:

### Examples Answers

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Watashi no desu.    | It's mine.          |
| 2. あ nata no desu.     | It's yours.         |
| 3. Tana か san no desu. | It's Mr. Tanaka's.  |
| 4. か nojo no desu.     | It's hers.          |
| 5. お ba あ san no desu. | It's grandmother's. |
| 6. か re no desu.       | It's his.           |
| 7. お か あ san no desu.  | It's mother's.      |

### □ Showing possession of objects using *no*

In the prior grammar section, you learned that the particle **no** is used to change words into their possessive form. The possessive form can be used by itself or followed by another word to show ownership. Try thinking of **no** as the glue the holds nouns together. You add objects after the possessive form as follows:

|                                    |                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Tanaka      's      car      it is |                    |
| Tanaかsan <b>no</b> くruma desu.     | It is Tanaka's car |

### Examples

|              |                            |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| my dog       | watashi <u>no</u> い nu     |
| your mother  | あ nata <u>no</u> お か あ san |
| her cat      | か nojo <u>no</u> ne こ      |
| his dog      | か re <u>no</u> い nu        |
| father's pen | お to う san <u>no</u> pen   |

The particle **no** is not limited to linking only two items. It can be used to further clarify the object or item being discussed

### Examples

|   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| あ nata no か nojo no nama え                | your girlfriend's name |
| お か あ san <u>no</u> ne こ <u>no</u> nama え | mother's cat's name    |

Now let's put your new knowledge of **no** into practice. These sentences may appear long at first, but they're using the simple grammar you've learned already

### Example Sentences

1. あ nata no か nojo no nama え wa nan desu か。  
What is your girlfriend's name?
2. Tana か san no おかあ san wa nansai desu か。  
How old is Tanaka san's mother?
3. こ bayashi san no お とう san wa dare desu か。  
Who is Kobayashi san's father?

## 3 Q&A しつものと こたえ E→J

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. <b>Who is it?</b><br/>It's me.<br/>It's Hideko.<br/>It's Mom.</p>   | <p><b>Dare desu か。</b><br/>Watashi desu<br/>Hide こ desu<br/>おかあ san desu.</p>   |
| <p>2. <b>Whose car is it?</b><br/>It's my car.<br/>It's mine.<br/>It's Mr. Takada's car.<br/>I don't know</p>             | <p><b>Dare no &lt; ruma desu か。</b><br/>Watashi no &lt; ruma desu.<br/>Watashi no desu.<br/>Ta か da san no &lt; ruma desu.<br/>Wa か rimasen.</p>                    |
| <p>3. <b>Which one is your rabbit?</b><br/>That one over there is my rabbit.<br/>It's that one.</p>                       | <p><b>Docchi が あ nata no う sa ぎ desu か。</b><br/>あ cchi が watashi no う sa ぎ desu.<br/>Socchi desu</p>  |
| <p>4. <b>Is this your car?</b><br/>Yes, it is.<br/>No, it's my friend's car.<br/>No, it's her car.<br/>No, it's hers.</p> | <p><b>こ re wa あ nata no &lt; ruma desu か。</b><br/>Ha い, そう desu.<br/>いいえ、tomodachi no &lt; ruma desu.<br/>いいえ、か nojo no &lt; ruma desu.<br/>いいえ、か nojo no desu.</p> |
| <p>5. <b>Which one is your bird?</b><br/>My bird is that one</p>  | <p><b>あ nata no tori wa dore desu か。</b><br/>Bo &lt; no tori wa sore desu.</p>  |

### 3 Q&A しつもと こたえ J→E

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. あ nata no ne こ wa dore desu か。<br>Watashi no ne こ wa sore desu.<br>Watashi no ne こ wa あ re desu.          | Which one is your cat?<br>My cat is that one.<br>My cat is that one over there.    |
| 2. おかあ san no nama え wa nan desu か。<br>Maria desu.<br>Yoshi こ desu.  | What is (your) mother's name?<br>It's Maria.<br>It's Yoshiko.                      |
| 3. Sore wa か nojo no taoru desu か。<br>いいえ、か re no taoru desu.<br>いいえ、Mami こ san no taoru desu.               | Is that her towel?<br>No, it's his towel.<br>No, it's Mamiko's towel.              |
| 4. あ nata no tomodachi no い nu no<br>nama え wa nan desu か。<br>い nu no nama え wa Pochi desu.<br>Wa か rimasen. | What is your friend's dog's name?<br><br>The dog's name is Pochi.<br>I don't know. |

### 3 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① Watashi no nama え wa Honda desu.
- ② Sanju うご sa い desu.
- ③ Watashi no か nojo no nama え wa Terada desu.
- ④ か nojo wa niju う kyu う sa い desu.

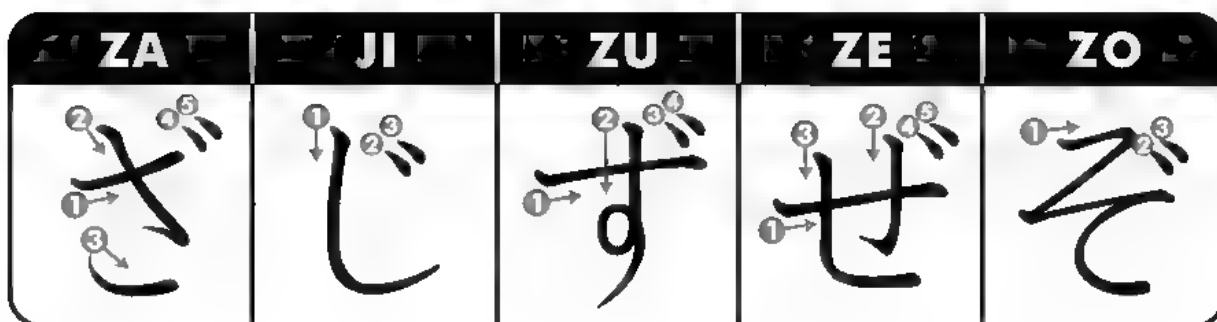
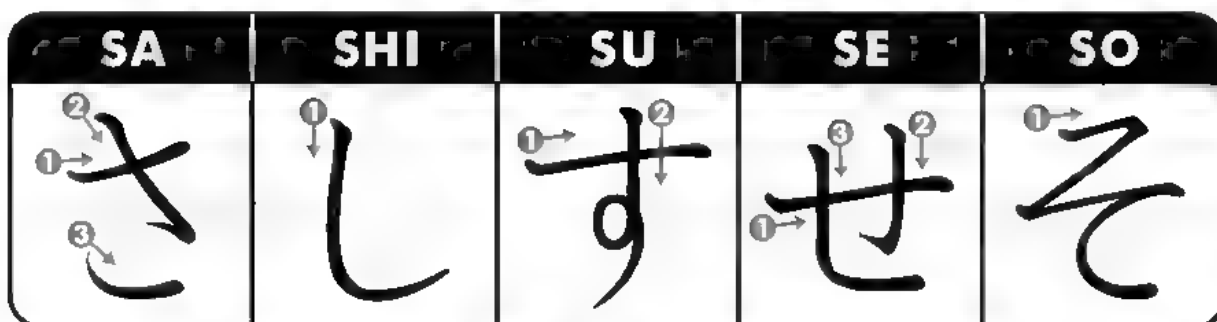




## Hiragana さしすせそ

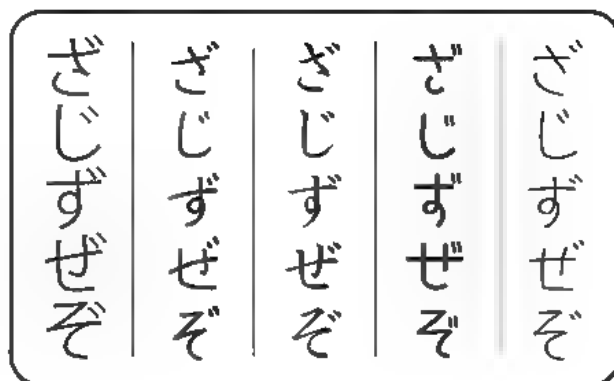
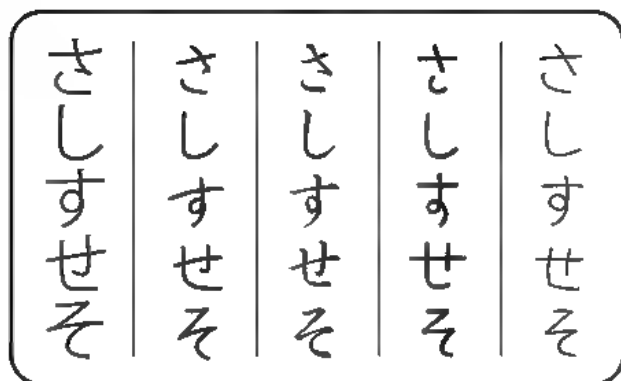
### さ New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



### さ Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.








## さ

## Writing Points かくポイント

## □ The different versions of さ (sa) and そ (so)

You may have noticed in the *Various Styles* section of this lesson that there are two versions of sa and so. You can write whichever version you choose, so long as it is legible.

| Different versions of さ (sa)  |   |
|---|---|
|  | This version has three strokes and is very common when writing. Most Japanese people use this version when writing. |
|  | This version has combined the second and third strokes into one stroke. It is very common in printed text.          |

| Different versions of そ (so)  |   |
|---|---|
|  | This version has two strokes and is common when writing. Many Japanese people write using this version. |
|  | This version similar to version above except that the first and second stroke are touching.             |
|  | This version has only one stroke and is very common in printed text. It is also acceptable for writing. |

さ

## Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|     |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| sa  | さ | さ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| shi | し | し |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| su  | す | す |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| se  | せ | せ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| so  | そ | そ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| za | ざ | ざ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ji | じ | じ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| zu | ず | ず |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ze | ぜ | ぜ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| zo | ぞ | ぞ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## さ

## Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. mura\_\_き (purple)  
sa

2. \_\_ \_\_ (to point)  
sa su

3. \_\_ro (white)  
shi

4. \_\_tsugyo う (graduation)  
so

5. \_\_ \_\_ (sushi)  
su shi

6. \_\_か n (time)  
ji

7. \_\_ ru (monkey)  
sa

8. お \_\_ い \_\_ n (grandfather)  
ji sa

9. あ \_\_ (sweat)  
se

10. あ n \_\_ n (safety)  
ze

11. \_\_ う (elephant)  
zo

12. げ n \_\_ い (currently, at present)  
za

## さ

## Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you have just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

しか  
(deer)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

すし  
(sushi)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

すずしい  
(cool)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

おそい  
(slow/late)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あし  
(legs/feet)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いす  
(chair)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

すき  
(like)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

すうじ  
(number)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

すいか  
(watermelon)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

せかい  
(world)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かず  
(numbers)

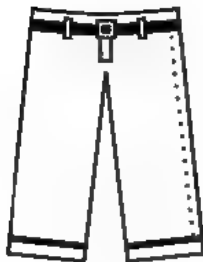
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

うし  
(cow)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**さ**

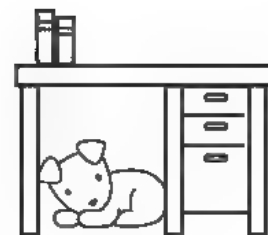
Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ず bon  
pants



し nbun  
newspaper



tsu く え  
desk



さ mu い  
cold



wa く せい  
planet



す し  
sushi

## さ

## Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

す ・

・ za

し ・

・ su

え ・

・ ku

こ ・

・ shi

ざ ・

・ i

あ ・

・ e

く ・

・ ko

い ・

・ a

### 3 Lesson Activities

#### □ Question and answer 1

Answer the following questions in Japanese by looking at the pictures.

1. Dare de ですか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Jenny さん de ですか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Dare no tori de ですか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Dare no okaasan de ですか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

#### □ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions in Japanese as if they were being asked to you directly.  
Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. あなたの名前はなんですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. おばあさん no nama e wa nan de ですか。

---

3. おかあさん no く ruma wa nan de ですか。

---

4. おじいさん wa nan さい de ですか。

---

5. おとうさん wa nan さい de ですか。

---

### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

|  |
|--|
| 1.   |
| こばやしさん: こ re wa dare no hon de ですか。                  |
| なかやさん: Wa か rima se n, tabun Tana かし さん no hon de す。 |
| こばやしさん:  |
| なかやさん:   |

### □ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

|   |
|---|
| 1.  |
| Terada san: Are you Mr. Tanaka?                   |
| Yamada san: No, I am Yamada Who is Mr. Tanaka?    |
| Terada san: Mr. Tanaka is Ms. Kobayashi's friend. |
| Terada san:                                       |
| Yamada san:                                       |
| Terada san:                                       |



**□ Reading comprehension questions**

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Honda さん no か nojo no nama え wa Tana さん de ですか。

---

2. Terada さん wa dare de ですか。

---

3. Terada さん wa Yamada さん no か nojo de ですか。

---

4. Terada さん wa nan さい de ですか。

---

**□ What would you say?**

What would you say in the following situations?

1. when you are saying good bye

---

2. when you greet someone in the morning

---

3. when you don't know the answer to a question

---

4. when you want to show your thanks to someone

---

## ❑ Short dialogue

Mr. Yoshida saw Ms. Ueki on the street and they started a conversation.

Yo し da さ n: う え き さ n, こ n n i c h i w a.

う え き さ n: こ n n i c h i w a, Yo し da さ n.

お h i さ し b u r i d e す。

お t o う さ n w a げ n き d e す か?

Yo し da さ n: H a い, げ n き d e す。

(looking at the big bag Ueki san is holding)

そ re w a n a n d e す か?

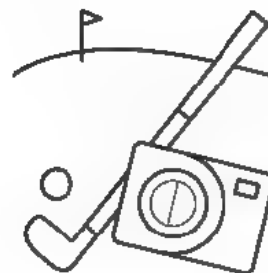
う え き さ n: こ re w a k a m e r a d e す。

W a t a し n o s h u m i d e す。

Yo し da さ n: す ご い d e す n e.

う え き さ n: Yo し da さ n n o s h u m i w a n a n d e す か?

Yo し da さ n: W a t a し n o s h u m i w a g o r u f u d e す。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

#### Progressive

お h i さ し b u r i d e す。

\_\_\_\_\_ w a げ n き d e す か。

げ n き d e す。

k a m e r a

s h u m i

す ご い d e す n e。

g o r u f u

#### English

It's been a long time. / Long time no see.

Is \_\_\_\_\_ healthy / doing fine? (Are you fine?)

They're fine. / I'm fine.

camera

hobby

That's great. / That's awesome.

golf

## ❑ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.

Change the dialogue to add your own hobbies (*shumi*).

### 3 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point.

1. こ re wa あ nata no ne こ de ですか。
2. あ nata no tomodachi no nama え wa nan de ですか。
3. いいえ、chi が い ma す。
4. そ re wa dare no く ruma de ですか。
5. Tana か さ n wa wata し no tomodachi de す。

### 3 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced. In this lesson we learned possession concepts. Let's look at the new sentence:

こ re wa あ nata no お か あ さ n no く ruma de ですか。  
Is this your mother's car?

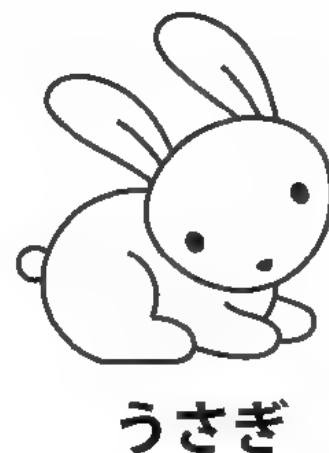
Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 1: Nan de ですか。  
What is it?

Lesson 2: こ re wa nan de ですか。  
What is this?

**Vocabulary Groups****E animals**

| Progressive | Kana | Kanji | English  |
|-------------|------|-------|----------|
| い nu        | いぬ   | 犬     | dog      |
| ね こ         | ねこ   | 猫     | cat      |
| ぞう          | ぞう   | 象     | elephant |
| う ma        | うま   | 馬     | horse    |
| うさぎ         | うさぎ  | 兔     | rabbit   |
| panda       | パンダ  | パンダ   | panda    |
| ね ず mi      | ねずみ  | 鼠     | mouse    |
| raion       | ライオン | ライオン  | lion     |
| き rin       | きりん  | 麒麟    | giraffe  |
| うし          | うし   | 牛     | cow      |
| さ ru        | さる   | 猿     | monkey   |
| hitsu じ     | ひつじ  | 羊     | sheep    |
| き tsune     | きつね  | 狐     | fox      |
| く ma        | くま   | 熊     | bear     |



Lesson

## 4

Level ①

## Colors and Adjectives

Making lists



## 4 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

## Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read さしすせそ, ざじずぜぞ.
2. Understand how to use the question word *dare* and the particles *no* and が.
3. Review vocabulary group E.

## Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to use the noun and adjective forms of colors.
2. Learn how to use the Japanese version of "and".

## From The Teachers

1. Memorize the colors.
2. Make sure that you understand the different types of adjectives introduced in this lesson.

## 4 New Words あたらしい ことば

| Progressive | Kana | Kanji | English     |
|-------------|------|-------|-------------|
| nani い ro   | なにいろ | 何色    | what color? |
| い ro        | いろ   | 色     | color       |
| あか          | あか   | 赤     | red         |
| あお          | あお   | 青     | blue        |
| く ro        | くろ   | 黒     | black       |
| しろ          | しろ   | 白     | white       |
| cha い ro    | ちゃいろ | 茶色    | brown       |
| きい ro       | きいろ  | 黄色    | yellow      |
| orenji      | オレンジ | オレンジ  | orange      |

|           |      |     |            |
|-----------|------|-----|------------|
| mura さき   | むらさき | 紫   | purple     |
| pinku     | ピンク  | ピンク | pink       |
| guree     | グレー  | グレー | gray       |
| ha いい ro  | はいいろ | 灰色  | gray       |
| mi ずい ro  | みずいろ | 水色  | light blue |
| midori    | みどり  | 緑   | green      |
| き n い ro  | きんいろ | 金色  | gold       |
| ぎ n い ro  | ぎんいろ | 銀色  | silver     |
| to う me い | とうめい | 透明  | clear      |

## 4 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. Excuse me. / I'm sorry.
2. I am sorry. / Please forgive me.

す mima せ n.  
ご men na さい。

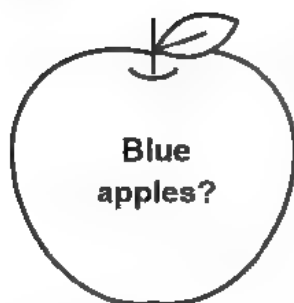
3. What is it in Japanese?
4. What is it in English?

Nihon ご de nan de ですか。  
えいご de nan de ですか。

5. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in English.
6. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in Japanese.

えいご de \_\_\_\_\_ です。  
Nihon ご de \_\_\_\_\_ です。

## 4 Culture Clip: Green is Blue?



Japanese people sometimes refer to what we call “green” as “blue.” For example, in Japan, when vegetables are not ripe they are referred to as blue, not green. A green apple isn't green – it's blue. Green traffic lights are called “blue” even though the colors used for traffic lights in Japan are exactly the same as in America. So keep this in mind when someone yells to you, “Hey, let's go! The light is *blue*!”

There is a prefecture in the northern part of Japan's main island Honshuu called Aomori, which literally means “blue forest.” Well then, what color is the sky in Japan, you ask? Blue, of course!

## 4 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The particle *to*

*To* is the equivalent of English “and.” It must come between every word in a list. *To* cannot be used to link sentences together.

#### Examples

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. あお <u>to</u> mura さき <u>to</u> pinku              | blue, purple, and pink.          |
| 2. wata し <u>to</u> あ nata <u>to</u> tana かさ n       | me, you and Tanaka san           |
| 3. い nu <u>to</u> ne こ <u>to</u> う ma <u>to</u> buta | a dog, a cat, a horse, and a pig |

#### Example Sentences

1. Wata し no く ruma wa く ro to ぎ n い ro です。  
My car is black and silver.
2. Tomodachi no ne こ wa cha い ro to し ro です。  
My friend's cat is brown and white.

    
ringo to suika to banana

    
inu to neko to usagi

### Making nouns into adjectives using *no*

Up until now, *no* has been used to mark possession. *No* is also used to create a “noun adjective” or what we call a “*no* adjective”. When *no* is added after a noun, that noun becomes an adjective. The noun that comes before the *no* describes the word that comes after the *no*.

[noun 1] + no + [noun 2]

#### Examples

1. Japanese food  
nihon (Japan) + tabemono (food) = nihon no tabemono
2. American cars  
Amerika (America) + < ruma = Amerika no < ruma
3. Japanese book  
nihon じ (Japanese language) + hon (book) = nihon じ no hon

## ❑ Using colors to describe

In this lesson, the colors are introduced in their noun form. To make the color an adjective you must link the words with **no**. To say "green car" in Japanese, you would say **mi どり no < ruma**. This type of adjective is called a **no** adjective. With the noun forms of colors you CANNOT say, for example, **mi どり < ruma** to mean "green car."

### English

what color car?  
a white rabbit  
a brown monkey  
a black bear  
a green pillow

### incorrect

nani い ro < ruma  
shiro うさぎ  
cha い ro ざ ru  
< ro < ma  
midori ma < ra

### correct

nani い ro no < ruma  
shiro no うさぎ  
cha い ro no ざ ru  
< ro no < ma  
midori no ma < ra

### Example Sentences

1. あか no < ruma wa あ nata no de す ka.
2. Dare no pinku no い え de す か。
3. Pinku no ma < ra wa bo < no de す。

Is the red car yours?  
Whose pink house is that?  
The pink pillow is mine.

## ❑ い adjectives

Some of the colors also have an い adjective form. An い adjective always ends with い and never requires **no** when describing other words - it is simply placed in front of the word it is to modify. Only the following colors have い adjective forms:

## 4 Color Adjective Forms

### Progressive

あかい  
あおい  
< ro い  
し ro い  
cha い ro い  
きい ro い

### Kana

あかい  
あおい  
くろい  
しろい  
ちゃいろい  
きいろい

### Kanji

赤い  
青い  
黒い  
白い  
茶色い  
黄色い

### English

red  
blue  
black  
white  
brown  
yellow



**Examples**

- |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <u>あかい</u> く ruma      | a <u>red</u> car   |
| 2. <u>あおい</u> pen         | a <u>blue</u> pen  |
| 3. <u>cha</u> い ro い ne こ | a <u>brown</u> cat |
| 4. <u>し</u> ro い い nu     | a <u>white</u> dog |

Whether you use the い adjective or *no* adjective version of a color is your choice. Just remember that not all colors have an い adjective version.

**English**

a yellow giraffe  
a blue car  
a brown horse  
a red fruit

**い adjective**

きい ro い き rin  
あおい く ruma  
cha い ro い う ma  
あかい furu-tsu

**の adjective**

きい ro no き rin  
あお no く ruma  
cha い ro no う ma  
あか no furu-tsu

**4 Q&A しつもと こたえ E→J****1. What color is it?**

It's black.  
It's pink.  
It's purple and orange.

Nani い ro de ですか。

く ro de す。  
Pinku de す。  
Mura さき to orenji de す。

**2. What color car is it?**

It's a green car.  
It's a red and blue car.  
It's a yellow car.

Nani い ro no く ruma de ですか。

Midori no く ruma de す。  
あか to あお no く ruma de す。  
きい ro no く ruma de す。

**3. Is your toothbrush blue?**

No, mine is white.  
No, mine is yellow.

あ nata no haburashi wa あお de ですか。

いいえ、wa たし no wa し ro de す。  
いいえ、wa たし no wa きい ro de す。

**4. What color is this?**

This is blue.  
It's purple.

こ re wa nani い ro de ですか。

こ re wa あお de す。  
Mura さき de す。

**5. Is your cat black and white?**

No, it is brown and grey.

あ nata no ne こ wa く ro to し ro de ですか。

いいえ、cha い ro to guree de す。

6. Whose car is the silver car?  
Maybe it is Yoshida san's.

ぎんいろの車はだれのですか。  
Tabun Yoshida san no de su.

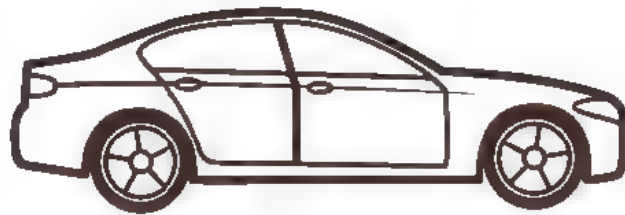
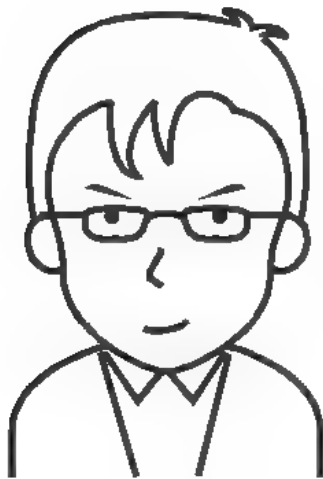
## 4 Q&A しつものと こたえ J→E

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. あかですか。<br/>はい、そうです。<br/>いいえ、ちがいます。</p>                            | <p>Is it red?<br/>Yes, it is.<br/>No, it's not.</p>  |
| <p>2. もうふはなにいろですか。<br/>しろいです。<br/>あかいです。<br/>あおとみどりです。</p>              | <p>What color is the blanket?<br/>It is white.<br/>It is red.<br/>It is blue and green.</p>                    |
| <p>3. マくらになにいろですか。<br/>マくらがみどりです。<br/>ムラサキです。<br/>くろです。<br/>ワカリませぬ。</p> | <p>What color is the pillow?<br/>The pillow is green.<br/>It is purple.<br/>It is black.<br/>I don't know.</p> |
| <p>4. コップはなにいろですか。<br/>はい、そうです。<br/>いいえ、ちがいます。<br/>いいえ、きいろです。</p>       | <p>Is the cup brown?<br/>Yes, it is.<br/>No, it isn't.<br/>No, it is yellow.</p>                               |
| <p>5. チャいろのうまはあなたのですか。<br/>いいえ、しろのうまです。</p>                             | <p>Is the brown horse yours?<br/>No, it is the white horse.</p>  |
| <p>6. あなたのおかあさんのうさぎは<br/>なにいろですか。<br/>ワカリませぬ。<br/>しろとチャいろです。</p>        | <p>What color is your mother's rabbit?<br/><br/>I don't know.<br/>It is white and brown.</p>                   |

**4 Reading Comprehension どっかい**

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① Jun こそ n wa niju ござい de す。
- ② か nojo no おとうさ n wa ご ju う ni さい de す。
- ③ おとうさ n no nama え wa Yo し hiro de す。
- ④ Jun こそ n to Jun こそ n no おとうさ n no く ruma wa Honda de す。
- ⑤ おとうさ n no く ruma wa mura さぎ de す。
- ⑥ Jun こそ n no く ruma wa pinku to あお de す。



## Hiragana たちつてと

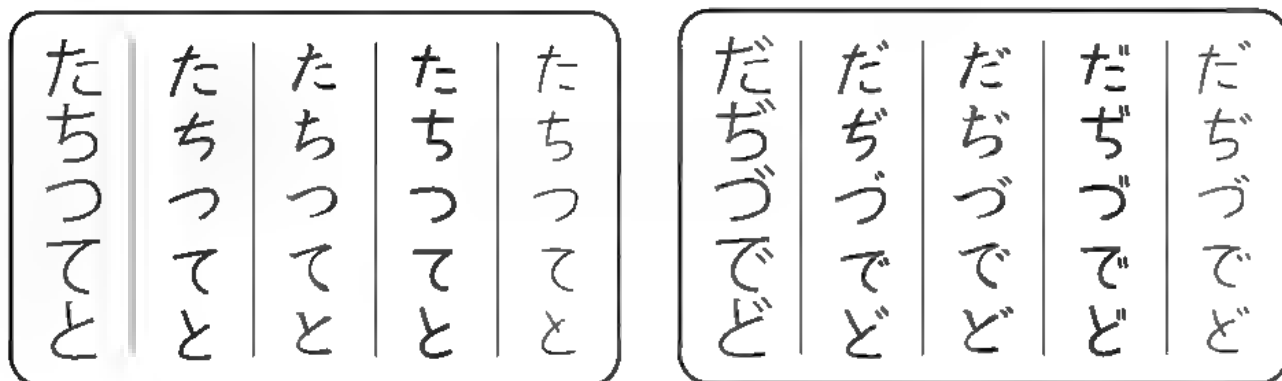
### た New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



### た Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## た Writing Points かくポイント

### ❑ The double consonants

The double consonants (*kk*, *pp*, *tt*, *cch*) are stressed with a slight pause before the consonant. To represent them in hiragana, a small つ is used.\* The small つ is always placed in front of the hiragana that needs to be doubled.

#### Examples

school

gakkou

がっこう

magazine

zasshi

ざっし

postage stamp

kitte

きって

\* Make sure to write the つ smaller than normal to avoid confusion with a normal つ.

### ❑ The double consonant sound analysis

If you look at the sound wave for a word that has a double consonant, you will see a pause or visible space before the consonant. Look at the two samples below:



### ❑ Which version of *zu* and *ji* should be used?

There are two versions of *zu* and *ji*. The first set is in Lesson 3 and the second set is taught in this lesson. ゑ and じ from Lesson 3 are the most commonly used versions. づ and ぢ are used in only a few words, such as はなぢ (nosebleed) and つづく (to continue). As you learn more vocabulary, pay attention to the hiragana that's used when you see these sounds. If you're not sure about what version to use, try ゑ and じ and 90% of the time you will be correct.

## た Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|     |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ta  | た | た |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| chi | ち | ち |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| tsu | つ | つ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| te  | て | て |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| to  | と | と |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| da | だ | だ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ji | ぢ | ぢ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| zu | づ | づ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| de | で | で |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| do | ど | ど |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## た Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. wa      し (me, I)  
          ta
2.           (free, no charge)  
      ta da
3.           (to stand)  
      ta tsu
4.           ぜ n (all of a sudden)  
      to tsu
5.           mu (to shrink)  
      chi ji
6.                う (to help)  
      te tsu da
7. い      い (it hurts, ouch)  
      ta
8. お      う さ n (father)  
      to
9. hana      (nose bleed)  
          ji
10. いき      mari (dead end)  
          do
11.      nwa (telephone)  
      de
12.           < (to reach, arrive)  
      to do

## た Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

ただ  
(free)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

つぎ  
(next)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ちず  
(map)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かど  
(corner)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ちち

(my father)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

たつ

(to stand)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ざっし

(magazine)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きって

(postage stamp)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あつい

(hot)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

たいいく

(phys. ed.)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

つづき

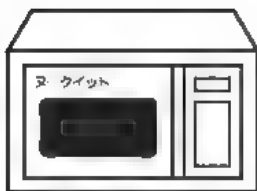
(continuation)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

とおい

(far)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**た****Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば**

でんし renji  
microwave oven



hon だ na  
bookshelf

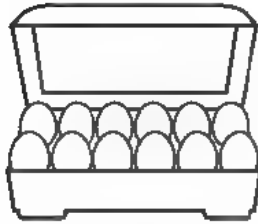


fu とう  
envelope





て  
hand



た ま ご  
eggs



くつした  
socks

### た Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

て ・

・ tsu

つ ・

・ da

さ ・

・ chi

ち ・

・ te

す ・

・ u

ぢ ・

・ ji

う ・

・ sa

だ ・

・ su

## 4 Lesson Activities

### ❑ Question and answer 1

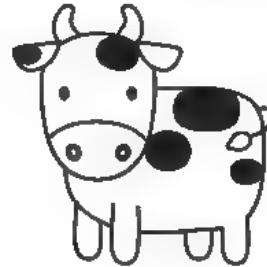
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures.

1. こ re wa nihon ごで nan ですか？



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. こ re wa nihon ごで nan ですか？



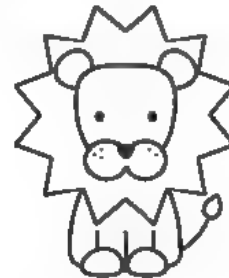
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. こ re wa えいごで nan ですか？



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. こ re wa えいごで nan ですか？



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

### ❑ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you know.

1. あ na た no く ruma wa nani い ro ですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. あ na た no haburashi wa nani い ro ですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Panda wa nani **い** ro ですか。

---

4. Banana wa nani **い** ro ですか。

---

5. ぞう wa gureー ですか。

---

☐ **What would you say?**

What would you say in the following situations?

1. after you stepped on someone's foot by mistake

---

2. when you want to know what color someone's dog is

---

3. when someone asks you if you are Mr. Tanaka

---

4. when you want to know how to say something in Japanese

---

## ☐ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English. Then, in the space after the number write where you think the conversation is taking place and if it is polite, informal or mixed.

|  |
|--|
| 1  |
| たかださ n: < ruma wa nani い ro ですか。                   |
| かどたさ n: Wa たし no < ruma ですか。                       |
| たかださ n: Ha い。                                      |
| かどたさ n: Mura さきです。あ na た no < ruma wa... ?         |
| たかださ n: Wa たし no < ruma wa ぎ n い ro と き n い ro です。 |
| たかださ n:  |
| かどたさ n:  |
| たかださ n:  |
| かどたさ n:  |
| たかださ n:  |

## ☐ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson

1. Jun こさ n no < ruma wa nani い ro ですか。

---

2. だ re no < ruma が Honda ですか。

---

3. だ re no < ruma が mura さき ですか。

---

4. Jun こさ n wa nan さい ですか。

---

5. だ re が ご ju う ni さい ですか。

---

### □ Short dialogue

Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Kobayashi are talking about their cars.

こ baya し さ n: た na か さ n の く ruma wa nan ですか。

た na か さ n: Wa たしの ①く ruma wa ②Nissan です。  
あ na た no wa?

こ baya し さ n: Wa たしの ①く ruma wa ③Mitsubishi です。  
い ro wa ④あか です。

た na か さ n: そうですか。  
Wa たしの ①く ruma wa ⑤し ro です。

### □ Short dialogue activity

Practice reading the above dialogue in pairs.

Substitute ①~⑤ using the words below and try the conversation again.

1. ① Dog
- ② (your choice)
- ③ (your choice)
- ④ Brown
- ⑤ Black and white



2. ① Cat
- ② (your choice)
- ③ (your choice)
- ④ Gray
- ⑤ Brown and white



3. ① Cell Phone (けいたいで nwa)
- ② (your choice)
- ③ (your choice)
- ④ Red
- ⑤ Blue



## More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

|      |               |      |              |
|------|---------------|------|--------------|
| えきたい | liquid, fluid | ちえ   | wisdom       |
| ちいき  | region        | ていあつ | low pressure |
| こうあつ | high pressure | げっこう | moonlight    |

## 4 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. す mima せ n.
2. Nihon ごで nan ですか。
3. Nani い ro ですか。
4. Wa たし no く ruma wa あかと く ro です。
5. た na かさ n no く ruma wa あおい Toyota です。

## 4 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あ na た no おかあさ n no く ruma wa し ro い ですか。  
Is your mother's car white?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 1: Nan ですか。  
What is it?

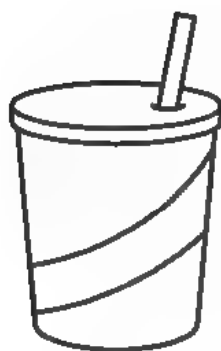
Lesson 2: こ re wa nan ですか。  
What is this?

Lesson 3: こ re wa あ na た no おかあさ n no く ruma ですか。  
Is this your mother's car?

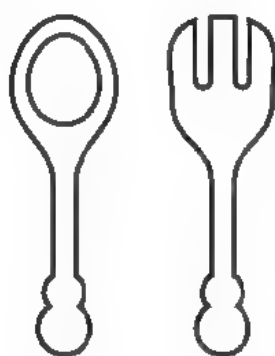
## Vocabulary Groups

### F things around the house

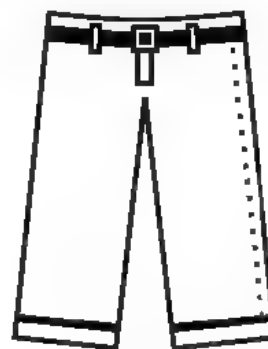
| Progressive | Kana     | Kanji   | English      |
|-------------|----------|---------|--------------|
| koppu       | コップ      | コップ     | cup; glass   |
| supu-n      | スプーン     | スプーン    | spoon        |
| fo-ku       | フォーク     | フォーク    | fork         |
| (お) さ ra    | (お) さら   | (お) 皿   | plate        |
| (お) chawan  | (お) ちゃわん | (お) 茶わん | bowl         |
| (お) ha し    | (お) はし   | (お) 箸   | chopsticks   |
| re いぞうこ     | れいぞうこ    | 冷蔵庫     | refrigerator |
| とけい         | とけい      | 時計      | clock        |
| terebi      | テレビ      | テレビ     | television   |
| zubon       | ズボン      | ズボン     | pants        |
| くつ          | くつ       | 靴       | shoe         |
| し nbun      | しんぶん     | 新聞      | newspaper    |



コップ



スプーンと  
フォーク



ズボン

Lesson

5

Level ①

**Likes and Dislikes**

Making nouns negative

**5 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read たちつてと, だぢづでど.
2. Understand how to use the question word **nani** い **ro** and the particle と.
3. Review vocabulary group F.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to say you like or dislike something
2. Learn how to use jana い.

**From The Teachers**

1. Know すき, き ら い and jana い like the back of your hand since they are used so much in daily conversation.

**5 New Words あたらしい ことば**

| Progressive | Kana  | Kanji | English                     |
|-------------|-------|-------|-----------------------------|
| すき          | すき    | 好き    | like                        |
| き ら い       | きらい   | 嫌い    | dislike, hate               |
| だいすき        | だいすき  | 大好き   | really like, like a lot     |
| だいき ら い     | だいきらい | 大嫌い   | really dislike, really hate |
| さところ        | さところ  | 聡子    | a girl's first name         |
| Yoしお        | よしお   | 良夫    | a boy's first name          |
| かい mono     | かいもの  | 買い物   | shopping                    |
| か n こう      | かんこう  | 観光    | sightseeing                 |
| ryo こう      | りょこう  | 旅行    | travel                      |
| shu くだい     | しゅくだい | 宿題    | homework                    |



|          |      |     |                   |
|----------|------|-----|-------------------|
| しごと      | しごと  | 仕事  | work              |
| さか na    | さかな  | 魚   | fish              |
| chikin   | チキン  | チキン | chicken           |
| nihon go | にほんご | 日本語 | Japanese language |
| ja あ     | じゃあ  | じゃあ | well then...      |

## 5 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

| Progressive | Kana   | Kanji  | English                |
|-------------|--------|--------|------------------------|
| おいしい        | おいしい   | 美味しい   | tastes good, delicious |
| おいしく na い   | おいしくない | 美味しくない | doesn't taste good     |

## 5 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The particle が with すき and きらい

To say you like or dislike something with すき (like) and きらい (dislike), the subject particle が is used after the thing that is liked or disliked.

[noun] が すき / きらいです。  
like / dislike a [noun]

#### Examples

- |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Wa たし wa いちごが すきです。         | I like strawberries.   |
| 2. Wa たし wa うさぎが すきです。         | I like rabbits.        |
| 3. Wa たし wa すいかが きらいです。        | I dislike watermelons. |
| 4. Wa たし wa いぬが きらいです。         | I dislike dogs.        |
| 5. Wa たし wa chikin が だいすきです。   | I really like chicken. |
| 6. Wa たし wa さか na が だいすきです。    | I really like fish.    |
| 7. Wa たし wa retasu が だいきらいです。  | I hate lettuce.        |
| 8. Wa たし wa かい mono が だいきらいです。 | I hate shopping.       |

## ❑ Using jana い to make things negative

Jana い means "not" or "don't" depending on the context of the sentence. Jana い is the informal version of ja あ rima せ n、de wa あ rima せ n、or で wa na い however the informal version is most commonly used in everyday conversation. Jana い on its own is informal, but can be made polite by adding です. It must always follow the word it is modifying.

[word] jana いです。

It's not a [word].

### Examples

- |                         |                              |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. あか jana い です。        | It's <u>not</u> red.         |
| 2. Wa たし jana い です。     | It's <u>not</u> me.          |
| 3. た na かさ n jana い です。 | It is <u>not</u> Mr. Tanaka. |
| 4. そ re jana い です。      | It's <u>not</u> that one.    |
| 5. すき jana い です。        | I <u>don't</u> like it.      |
| 6. き ら い jana い です。     | I <u>don't</u> dislike it.   |

## ❑ The "one" pronoun

When the particle no comes after the noun version of a color or after an adjective, it transforms the word into what is called the "one" pronoun.

### Examples

- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. あか no             | (a / the) red one               |
| 2. cha い ro no       | (a / the) brown one             |
| 3. おいしい no           | (a / the) good tasting one      |
| 4. nihon no          | (a / the) Japanese one          |
| 5. mura さきと きい ro no | (a / the) purple and yellow one |

### Example Q&A

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. ど re が すきですか。<br>あか <u>no</u> が すきです。<br>おいしい <u>no</u> が すきです。                      | <b>Which one do you like?</b><br>I like the red <u>one</u> .<br>I like the delicious <u>one</u> .      |
| 2. あ na た no ne こ wa ど re ですか。<br>Cha い ro <u>no</u> です。<br>く ro と orenji <u>no</u> です。 | <b>Which one is your cat?</b><br>It's the brown <u>one</u> .<br>It's the black and orange <u>one</u> . |

## □ Using *ja あ* to say “Well then...”

*Ja あ* is a very well used word in Japanese. It's said at the beginning of a sentence, normally when asking a follow-up question.

### Example Conversation

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Ne こが すきですか。                 | Do you like cats?                  |
| B: いいえ、だいき らい です。                  | No I hate them!                    |
| A: Ja あ、い nu が すき ですか。             | Well then, do you like dogs?       |
| B: はい、だいすき です。                     | Yes, I love (like a lot) them!     |
|                                    |                                    |
| 2. A: あ re が あ na た no く ruma ですか。 | Is that your car?                  |
| B: いいえ、ちがい ma す。                   | No, it's not.                      |
| A: Ja あ、ど re ですか。                  | Well then, which one is it?        |
| B: あ re です。                        | It's that one.                     |
|                                    |                                    |
| 3. A: あかが すきですか。                   | Do you like red?                   |
| B: いいえ、あかが き らい です。                | No I dislike red.                  |
| A: Ja あ、nani い ro が すきですか。         | Well then, what color do you like? |
| B: Mi ど n と mura さきが すきです。         | I like green and purple.           |

## 5 Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

### □ Using き らい versus すき jana い

When speaking in Japanese, you should be careful when using き らい and だいき らい. In Japanese culture these words sound a bit harsh. If you don't like something, then you should use すき jana い instead of き らい in everyday conversations.

## 5 Q&A しつもと こたえ E→J

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Do you like it?     | すきですか。           |
| Yes, I like it.        | Ha い、すきです。       |
| No, I don't like it.   | いいえ、すき jana いです。 |
| Yes, I really like it. | Ha い、だいすきです。     |

**2. Do you dislike it?**

Yes, I dislike it.

No, I don't dislike it.

No, I like it.

きらいですか。

はい、きらいです。

いいえ、きらいじゃありません。

いいえ、好きです。

**3. What do you like?**

I like shopping.

I like travel.

I like Japanese (language)

Nani ga suki desu ka.

かい mono ga suki desu.

Ryo koo ga suki desu.

Nihon go ga suki desu.

**4. What do you dislike?**

I dislike homework.

I dislike work.

I dislike fish.

Nani ga kirai desu ka.

Shu kudo ga kirai desu.

shigoto ga kirai desu.

sakana ga kirai desu.

**5. Which one do you like? (two items)**

I like the red one.

I like the green one.

I like this one.

どっちが suki desu ka.

aka no ga suki desu.

Mi do ri no ga suki desu.

kocchi ga suki desu.

## 5 Q&A しつもと こたえ J→E

**1. さかなが suki desu ka.**

はい、さかなが suki desu.

いいえ、さかなが kirai desu.

はい、さかなが daisuki desu.

いいえ、好きじゃありません。

いいえ、おいしくありません。

**Do you like fish?**

Yes, I like fish.

No, I dislike fish.

Yes, I really like fish.

No, I don't like it.

No, it doesn't taste good.

**2. Watashi no kuruma ga suki desu ka.**

はい、だいすきです。

いいえ、だいきらいです。

**Do you like my car?**

Yes, I like it a lot.

No, I hate it.

**3. Banana ga kirai desu ka.**

はい、きらいです。

いいえ、banana ga suki desu.

Banana ga kirai jaありません。

**Do you dislike bananas?**

Yes, I dislike them.

No, I like bananas.

I don't dislike bananas.

## 4. Mi ずが すきですか。

Ha い そうです。

いいえ、すき jana いです。

Do you like water?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't like it.

## 5. Nani が き ら いですか。

Cha い ro い banana が だい き ら いです。

かい mono が き ら いです。

What do you dislike?

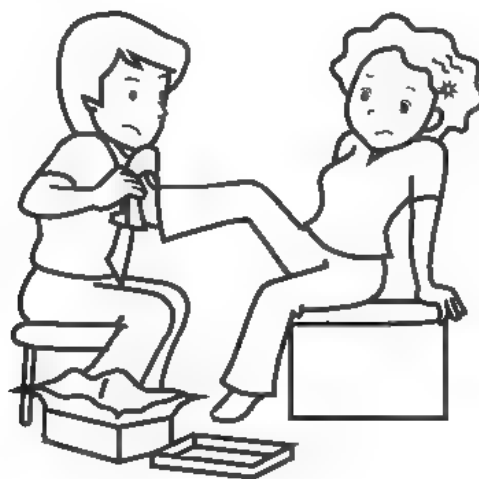
I really hate brown bananas.

I hate shopping.

**5 Reading Comprehension** どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

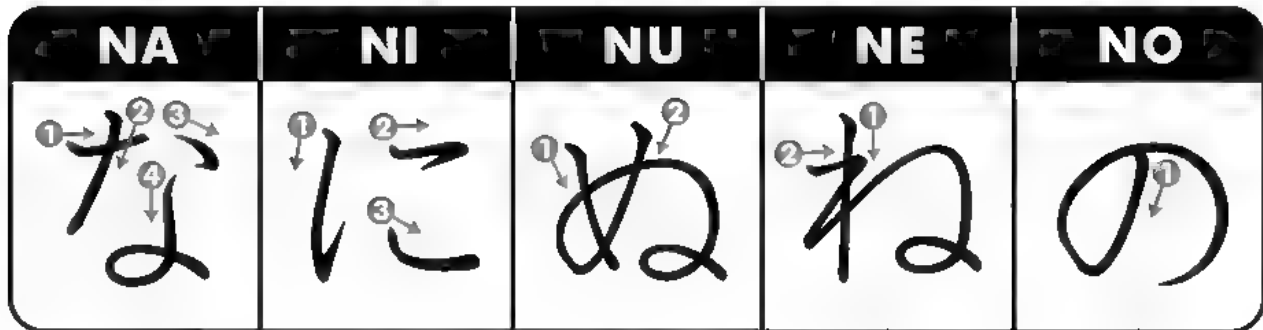
- ① さとこさん no が re no nama え wa た na が yo しお です。
- ② さとこさん wa 25 さい です。
- ③ Yo しおさん wa 27 さい です。
- ④ さとこさん wa かい mono が だい すき です。
- ⑤ Yo しおさん wa かい mono が すき jana い です。
- ⑥ Yo しおさん wa しごと が すき です。
- ⑦ さとこさん wa しごと が き ら い です。
- ⑧ さとこさん と yo しおさん wa ryo こう が だい すき です。



## Hiragana なにぬねの

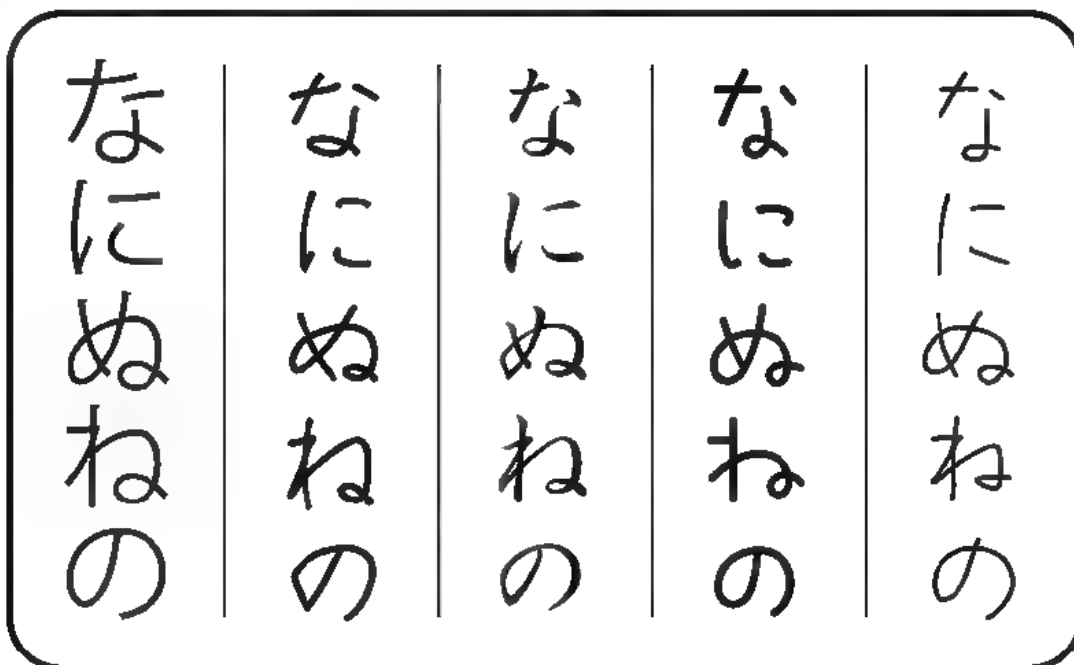
## な New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing fast.



## な Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## な Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| na | な | な |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ni | に | に |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| nu | ぬ | ぬ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ne | ね | ね |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| no | の | の |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## な Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. \_\_\_\_つ (summer)  
na

2. \_\_\_\_hon (Japan)  
ni

3. \_\_\_\_こ (cat)  
ne

4. yo\_\_\_\_か (middle of the night)  
na

5. \_\_\_\_mu (to drink)  
no

6. \_\_\_\_ru (to sleep, to go to bed)  
ne

7. \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ (what?)  
na ni

8. \_\_\_\_いく rumi (stuffed animal)  
nu

9. \_\_\_\_がい (bitter tasting)  
ni

10. お\_\_\_\_えさ n (older sister)  
ne

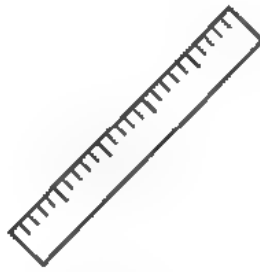
11. \_\_\_\_< (to take off clothes)  
nu

12. \_\_\_\_ru (to ride)  
no

## な Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



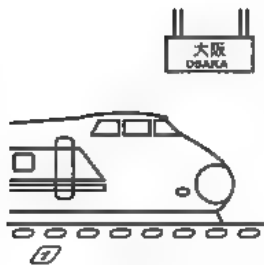
いぬ  
dog



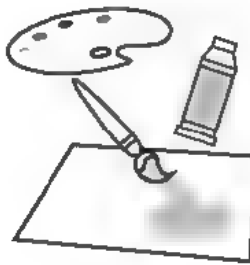
ながい  
long



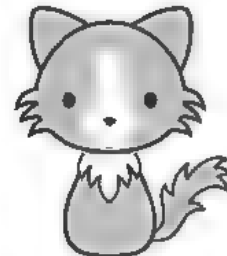
に wa と ri  
chicken



の ru  
to ride



ぬ ru  
to paint



ねこ  
cat

## な Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

なに  
(what)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ねこ  
(cat)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|



なな  
(seven)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

にし  
(west)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

なつ  
(summer)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あなた  
(you)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ねつ  
(fever)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

いぬ  
(dog)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

のど  
(throat)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かに  
(crab)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

にっき  
(diary)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

にく  
(meat)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

にじ  
(rainbow)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**な** Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

|     |      |
|-----|------|
| な ・ | ・ no |
| の ・ | ・ ni |
| か ・ | ・ ta |
| す ・ | ・ na |
| ぬ ・ | ・ ka |
| ね ・ | ・ nu |
| に ・ | ・ ne |
| た ・ | ・ su |

## 5 Lesson Activities

### □ Question and answer 1

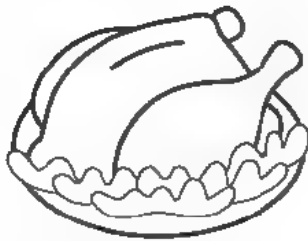
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures. Use ~ja ない です when answering the following questions:

1a. こ re wa さかな ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_

1b. Ja あ (“Well then”)、 な n ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_

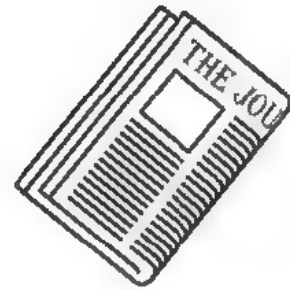


2a. こ re wa hon ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_

2b. Ja あ、 な n ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_



3a. こ re wa (お) chawan と  
supu-n ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_

3b. Ja あ、 な n ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_



4a. こ re wa くつ ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_

4b. Ja あ、 な n ですか？

\_\_\_\_\_



### ❑ Question and answer 2

Pick one of the pictures and say, [item] が すきです or [item] が き ら いです.

ど re が すきですか / き ら いですか?



きい ro い とけい



く ro い とけい



mi ど ri の とけい

ど re が すきですか / き ら いですか?



しごと



shu くだい



かい mo の

### ❑ Question and answer 3

Answer the following questions as though they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you know when writing your answer.

1. Ryo こう が すきですか。

---

2. ねこ が き ら いですか。

---

3. ya さいが すきですか。

---

4. に hon ご が すきですか。

---

5. (お)すし wa おいしいですか。

---

### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following example into English.

1. Yo しおさ n wa く ruma が だいすきです。
2. Yo しおさ n の く ruma wa あかとし ro です。
3. か re の し ro いく ruma wa hon だ です。
4. あかの wa Toyota です。
5. Yo しおさ n の おとうさ n wa く ruma が だいすきです。
6. おとうさ n の く ruma wa き n い ro の く ruma と きい ro いく ruma です。
7. おかあさ n wa きい ro いく ruma が すき ja ないです。

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

**□ Reading comprehension questions**

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. さとこさんのか re wa、だ re ですか。

---

2. Yoしおさん wa しごとが き ra いですか。

---

3. さとこさん wa な n さいですか。

---

4. だ re が かい mo の が すきですか。

---

5. だ re が、ryo こうが すきですか。

---

## □ Short dialogue

Ms. Mori and Ms. Nishida are talking about movies.

Mori さ n: にしださ n wa えいがが すきですか。

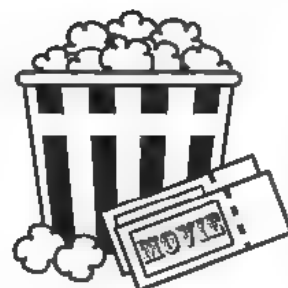
にしださ n: Ha い、だいすきです。

Mori さ n: Wa たし mo です。  
Ha い yu う wa だ re が すきですか。

にしださ n: Harison Fo-do が すきです。

Mori さ n: そうですか。  
Wa たし wa Buraddo Pitto が すきです。

にしださ n: Wa たし mo Buraddo Pitto mo すきです。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

| Progressive   | Kana      | Kanji     | English               |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| えいが           | えいが       | 映画        | movie                 |
| はい yu う       | はいゆう      | 俳優        | actor                 |
| Harison Fo-do | ハリソン・フォード | ハリソン・フォード | Harrison Ford (actor) |
| Buraddo Pitto | ブラッド・ピット  | ブラッド・ピット  | Brad Pitt (actor)     |

## □ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your most/least favorite movie(s).
3. Talk about your most/least favorite actor(s).

## More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

|     |                 |       |                  |
|-----|-----------------|-------|------------------|
| ぬぐ  | to undress      | かね    | steel            |
| につき | diary           | にく    | meat             |
| ねじ  | a screw         | ねぎ    | green onion      |
| ねあげ | a rise in price | なつかしい | dear, longed for |

## 5 Drill ドリル

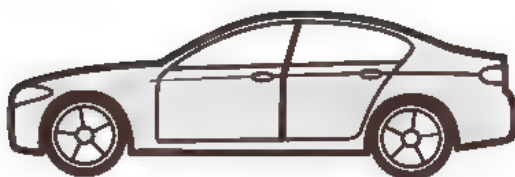
Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なにが すきですか。
2. しごとが だいすきです。
3. さかな to ya さいが すき ja ない です。
4. Wa たしの く ruma wa mura さき ja ない です。
5. あなたの と mo だちの く ruma wa あお ja ない ですか。

## 5 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたのおかあさん wa なにいろ のく ruma が すきですか。  
What color car does your mother like?



あか



しろ



Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 2: こ re wa な n ですか。

What is this?

Lesson 3: こ re wa あなたの おかあさ n の く ruma ですか。

Is this your mother's car?

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n の く ruma wa し ro い ですか。

Is your mother's car white?

## Vocabulary Groups

### G sports and entertainment

#### Progressive

basuketto booru

gyanburu

sakka-

#### Kana

バスケットボール

ギャンブル

サッカー

#### Kanji

バスケットボール

ギャンブル

サッカー

#### English

basketball

gambling

soccer

### H fruit

#### Progressive

いちご

みかん / orenji

りんご

banana

すいか

remon

momo

ぶどう

#### Kana

いちご

みかん / オレンジ

りんご

バナナ

すいか

レモン

もも

ぶどう

#### Kanji

莓

みかん / オレンジ

りんご

バナナ

西瓜

レモン

桃

ぶどう

#### English

strawberry

orange

apple

banana

watermelon

lemon

peach

grapes

Lesson

## 6

Level ①

## Wanting and Not Wanting

Conjugating adjectives



## 6 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

## Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read なにぬねの.
2. Understand how to use すき, きらい and じゃない.
3. Review vocabulary group G and H.

## Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to say you want or don't want something.
2. Learn how to conjugate adjectives into the negative form.

## From The Teachers

1. Don't confuse the usage of じゃない, and くない. Remember that じゃない is used with nouns and くない is used with い adjectives.

## 6 New Words あたらしい ことば

| Progressive      | Kana    | Kanji   | English         |
|------------------|---------|---------|-----------------|
| ほしい              | ほしい     | 欲しい     | want            |
| doru             | ドル      | ドル      | dollars         |
| えん               | えん      | 円       | yen             |
| inta-netto       | インターネット | インターネット | internet        |
| おかね              | おかね     | お金      | money           |
| mo-chi ron       | もちろん    | もちろん    | of course       |
| ko-ra            | コーラ     | コーラ     | cola            |
| mi- <sup>ず</sup> | みず      | 水       | water           |
| の mimo の         | のみもの    | 飲み物     | a drink, drinks |

## 6 Culture Clip カルチャー クリップ

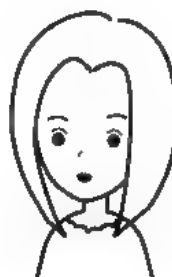
You might see < n or *chan* added to the end of last or first names. They are both used to show affection, but are not limited to just that. *Chan* is mostly used after girls' names and < n after boys' names. *Chan* is used quite often after children's names, regardless of the sex of the child. It is also not unusual for a higher-up in a company to refer to the female staff members with a < n following their names.

### When NOT to use

*Chan* and < n should *never* be used when addressing people above you in social status. If you ever hear someone addressing another person with < n or *chan*, you can assume that the speaker is equal or higher in status.



kun



chan

## 6 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. けっこうです。

I'm fine. (No thanks)

## 6 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

The following adjectives are all い adjectives. い adjectives always end in い. The particle の is not necessary to make the word an adjective. Since they are already adjectives, they can simply be placed in front of a word to modify it. They can be considered *true adjectives* because they stand alone as adjectives without any help.

| Progressive | Kana  | Kanji | English |
|-------------|-------|-------|---------|
| あたらしい       | あたらしい | 新しい   | new     |
| furu い      | ふるい   | 古い    | old     |
| あつい         | あつい   | 暑い    | hot     |
| さむい         | さむい   | 寒い    | cold    |

|      |      |     |                   |
|------|------|-----|-------------------|
| つめたい | つめたい | 冷たい | cold to the touch |
| ぬるい  | ぬるい  | 温い  | warm, luke warm   |

## 6 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Making adjectives negative

In the prior lesson you learned how to make nouns negative by adding *ja ない* to them. For example, *いぬ ja ないです*, means "it is not a dog." To make *い* adjectives negative, *~ja ない* can not be used.

All true adjectives end with an *い*. To make *い* adjectives negative, drop the last *い* then add *くない*.

(い adjective) minus い, add くない  
It's not (adjective).

#### Examples

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. あたらしい = new<br>あたらしい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> new                           | 2. おいしい = delicious<br>おいしい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> delicious |
| 3. さむい = cold<br>さむい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> cold                             | 4. あつい = hot<br>あつい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> hot               |
| 5. つめたい = cold to the touch<br>つめたい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> cold to the touch | 6. ふるい = old<br>ふるい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> old               |

### □ The colors as negative adjectives

The same thing can be done with the adjective forms of colors.

#### Examples

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. あかい = red<br>あかい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> red       | 2. あおい = blue<br>あおい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> blue       |
| 3. かいろい = brown<br>かいろい <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> brown | 4. きいロイ = yellow<br>きいロイ <u>くない</u> = <u>not</u> yellow |

## □ Wanting and not wanting

The particle *が* is used with *ほしい* (want) in the same way it is used with *すぎ* and *きらい*. *が* is used to mark the thing that you want or don't want.

**[thing] が ほしい です。**

**I want [thing]**

To change “want” into “don't want,” drop the *い* then add *くない*.

**[thing] が ほしく ない です。**

**I don't want [thing]**

### Example Sentences

1. あたらしい terebi が ほしい です。  
I want a new television.
2. つめたい の mimo の が ほしい です。  
I want a cold drink.
3. Furu iku ruma が ほしく ない です。  
I don't want an old car.

## □ Tricky uses of the particle の

The particle *の* that we learned in other lessons is used to show possession (as in the sentence **わたしの く ruma です** – “it is my car”). More importantly, we learned that *の* can be used to make any noun into an adjective just by coming after the noun, as in **にほんご の hon** (a Japanese language book).

The usage described above is simple, but sometimes when you have a string of words separated by *の* it can be tricky. Look at the following sentence:

1. わたしの と もだちの あきこ さん は 25 さい です。  
My friend Akiko is 25 years old.

This sentence may look confusing, but remember that the key function of *の* is to make the noun or word it comes after into a modifier (no-adjective). **わたしの と もだちの あきこ** simply means, “my friend Akiko.” **わたしの と もだちの** is just modifying **あきこ**.

## ❑ Numbers and money

If you want to say 100 dollars or 100 yen, you just add *doru* or *en* after the number.  
The particle の is not required.

### Examples

1. 100 yen.

Hya くらえ n.

2. 1000 dollars.

せん doru.

## 6 Q&A しつもと こたえ J→E

1. なにが ho しいですか。

あた ra しい く ruma が ho しい です。

いち man doru が ho しい です。

かの jo が ho しい です。

つ me たい ko-ra が ho しい です。

**What do you want?**

I want a new car.

I want 10,000 dollars.

I want a girlfriend.

I want a cold cola.

2. ど re が ho しいですか。

こ re と こ re が ho しい です。

あかのが ho しい です。

Mi ど ri と あおのが ho しい です。

**Which one do you want?**

I want this one and this one.

I want the red one.

I want the green and blue one.

3. あなたの く ruma wa あた ra しいですか。

いいえ、furu い です。

いいえ、あた ra しくない です。

**Is your car new?**

No, it's old.

No, it's not new.

4. Konpyu-ta が ho しいですか。

いいえ、ho しくない です。

Ha い、ho しい です。

**Do you want a computer?**

No, I don't want one.

Yes, I want one.

## 6 Q&A しつもと こたえ E→J

1. **What color car do you want?**

I want a silver car.

I don't want a car.

なに い ro の く ruma が ho しいですか。

ぎん い ro の く ruma が ho しい です。

く ruma が ho しくない です。

2. **Don't you want a new refrigerator?**

Of course I want one.

あた ra しい re いぞう が ho しくない ですか。

Mo ち ron ho しい です。

## 3. Is your drink cold?

No, it's not cold.

No, it's warm.

あなたの の mimo の wa つ me たい ですか。

いいえ、つ me たく ない です。

いいえ、ぬ ru い です。

## 4. Do you want a newspaper?

Yes, I want the Asahi Newspaper.

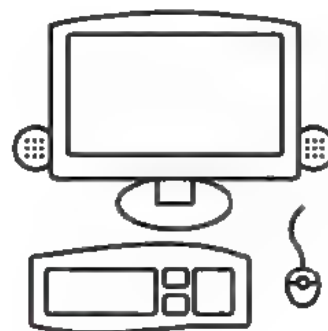
し nbun が ho しい ですか。

Ha い、あさ hi し nbun が ho しい です。

## 6 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

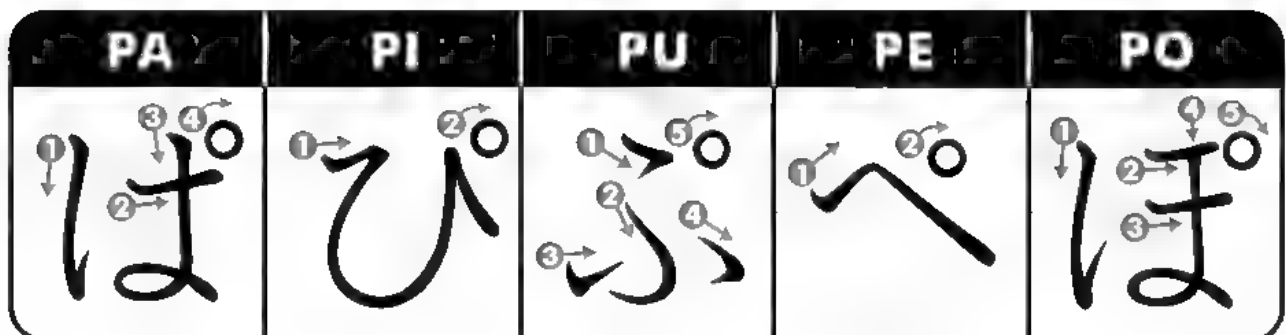
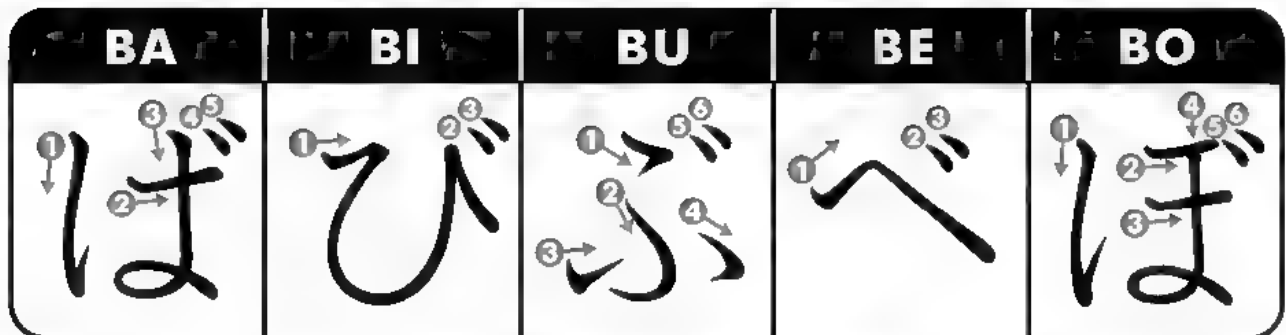
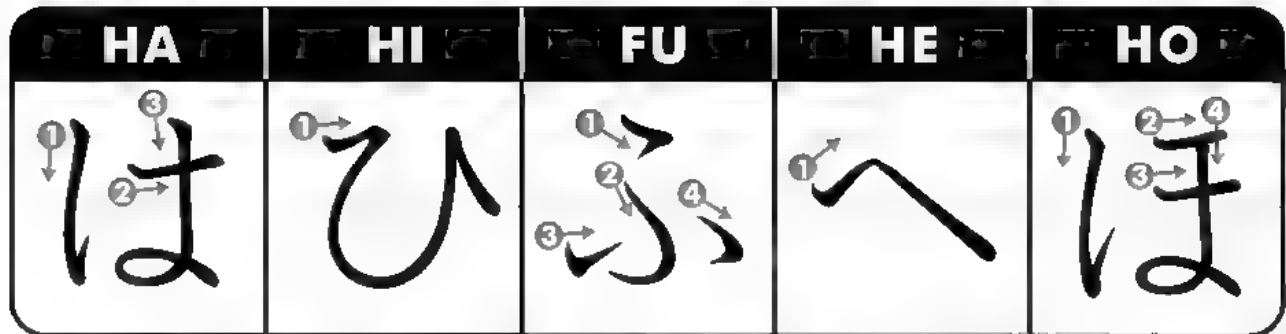
- ① Bo く の な ma え wa ma つ mo と です。
- ② Inta-netto が すき です。
- ③ Konpyu-ta-が ho しい です。
- ④ Bo く の と mo だち の たし ro く n wa konpyu-ta-が ho しく ない です。
- ⑤ たし ro く n wa あか い く ruma が ho しい です。
- ⑥ Bo く wa あか い く ruma wa すき ja ない です。
- ⑦ し ro い く ruma が すき です。



## Hiragana はひふへほ

## は New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

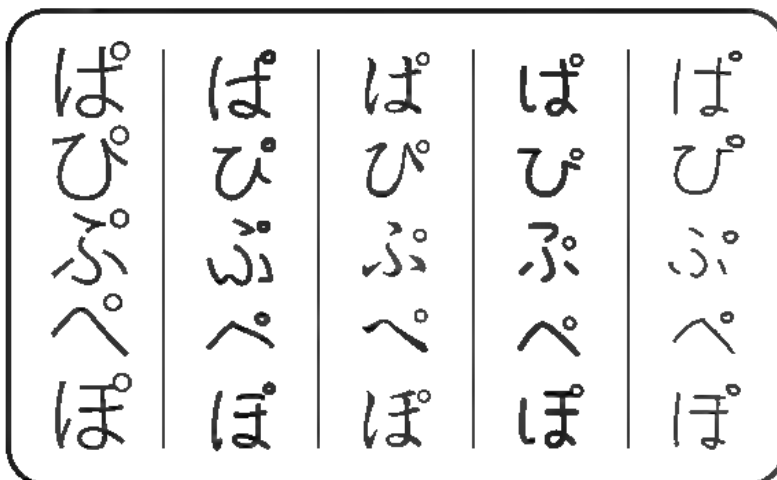
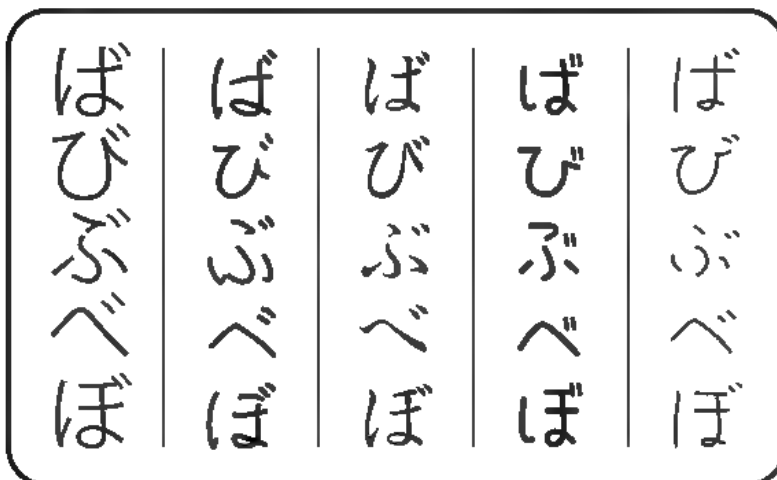
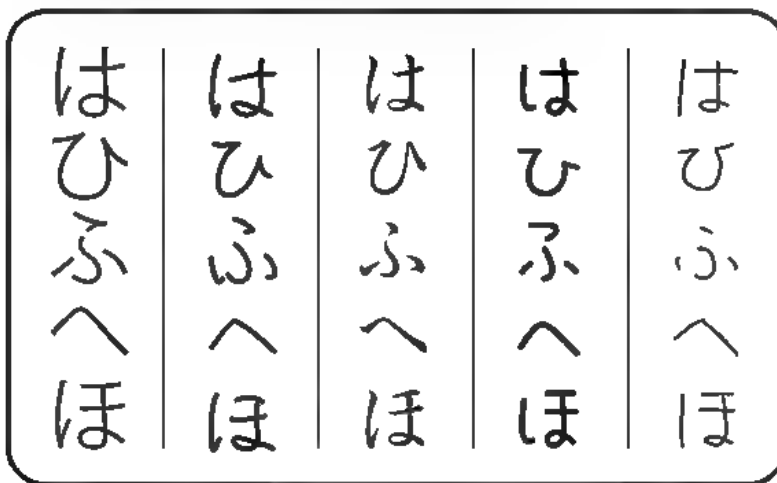
Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.





## は Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## は Writing Points かくポイント

### □ What is that circle?

The *pa pi pu pe po* hiragana are made by adding a circle in the area where *dakuten* normally would go. The circle should be written clockwise and is always the last stroke. Most Japanese people refer to this as simply *maru*, which means “circle.” The official name for it is *handakuten*.

は → ぱ

HA

PA

ひ → ぴ

HI

PI

### □ Why isn't ふ written as HU?

*Japanese From Zero!* represents ふ as *FU* instead of *HU* in ro-maji. Japanese people will sometimes represent ふ as *HU* in ro-maji, however, the pronunciation of ふ is closer to *FU*. The F sound in ふ should be voiced softer than the F sound in an English word.

### □ The easy way to write ふ (fu)

ふ tends to be difficult to write, but there is an easy way: connect the first and second stroke into what looks like a number “3.”

ふ

The 3 Version

ふ ふ ふ

Actual Font Versions

**は** Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ha | は | は |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| hi | ひ | ひ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| fu | ふ | ふ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| he | へ | へ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ho | ほ | ほ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ba | ば | ば |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| bi | び | び |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| bu | ぶ | ぶ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| be | べ | べ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| bo | ぼ | ぼ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| pa | ぱ | ぱ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| pi | ぴ | ぴ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| pu | ぷ | ぷ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| pe | ぺ | ぺ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| po | ぽ | ぽ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## は Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた

### □ The topic marker は (wa)

A topic marker in Japanese identifies the subject of a sentence. The topic marker "wa" is written using the は (ha) character and can never be written using the わ (wa) character. In all other situations, は (ha) is always read as "ha."

#### Example Sentences

1. あなたは (wa) だ re ですか。
2. Banana は (wa) きい ro です。

Who are you?  
Bananas are yellow.

### □ The direction marker へ (e)

The direction marker "e" is written using the へ (he) character and can never be written using the え (e) character. In all other situations, へ (he) is always read as "he."

**NOTE:** This grammar point is covered in Lesson 12.

#### Example Sentences

1. がっこうへ (e) いき ma す。
2. とう kyo うへ (e) いき ma す。

I am going towards (to) school.  
I am going towards (to) Tokyo.

## は Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. \_\_\_\_ru (spring)  
    ha
2. \_\_\_\_ru ご \_\_\_\_n (lunch)  
    hi           ha
3. \_\_\_\_yu (winter)  
    fu
4. \_\_\_\_い wa (peace)  
    he
5. え \_\_\_\_n (picture book)  
    ho
6. が n \_\_\_\_ru (to do your best)  
    ba
7. \_\_\_\_な \_\_\_\_ (fireworks)  
    ha       bi
8. か mi \_\_\_\_ < ro (paper bag)  
    bu
9. \_\_\_\_と me \_\_\_\_re (love at first sight)  
    hi       bo
10. < ra \_\_\_\_ru (to compare)  
    be
11. \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_な (electric spark)  
    hi   ba
12. え n \_\_\_\_つ (pencil)  
    pi

## は Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

はし

(chopsticks)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

へそ

(belly button)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

はと

(pigeon; dove)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ふた  
(pig)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ひと  
(people)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

しっぽ  
(tail)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

とうふ  
(tofu)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

はっぱ  
(leaf)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ほっぺ  
(cheeks)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ぼうし  
(hat)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きっぷ  
(ticket)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

はなび  
(fireworks)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**は**

## Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ひ sho  
secretary



ふく ro う  
owl



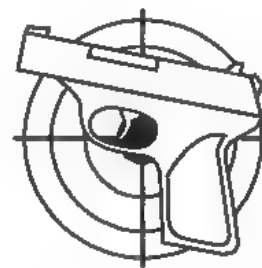
おばけ  
monster



ほうたい  
bandage



はし ru  
to run



てっぽう  
pistol, gun

## は Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

ふ・

・ pi

ぺ・

・ pe

ぜ・

・ bo

ぼ・

・ gi

は・

・ fu

た・

・ ze

ぴ・

・ ta

ぎ・

・ ha

## 6 Lesson Activities

### □ Question and answer 1

Pick one of the pictures and say ~が ほしいです / ほしくありません。

どれが ほしいですか / ほしくありませんか。



ju su



mi zu



ko-ra

どれが ほしいですか / ほしくありませんか。



う ma



ねこ



いぬ

### □ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. なにに ro の く ruma が すきですか。

---



2. にほ n の ざっしが ほしいですか。

---

3. つ me たい ko-ra が ほしいですか。

---

4. あなたの terebi は、あた ra しいですか。

---

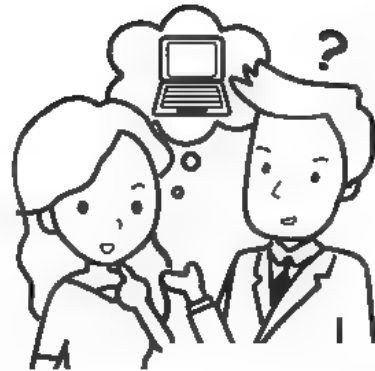
### ❑ Question and answer 3

Using \_\_\_\_\_ が ほしいです, make a conversation for the following pictures:

What are Ichiro and Yumiko saying in this picture?

Ichiro: \_\_\_\_\_

Yumiko: \_\_\_\_\_



What are the nurse and the patient saying in this picture?

Nurse: \_\_\_\_\_

Patient: \_\_\_\_\_



## □ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| 1.          |  |
| George さ n: | What is your name?                                     |
| Yu か り さ n: | It is Yukari. What is yours?                           |
| George さ n: | My name is George. I am 34 years old. How old are you? |
| Yu か り さ n: | I am 26 years old.                                     |
| George さ n: |  |
| Yu か り さ n: |  |
| George さ n: |  |
| Yu か り さ n: |  |

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Ma つ mo とく n は、なにが すきですか。

---

2. Ma つ mo とく n の と mo だちの な ma えは、な n ですか。

---

3. たし ro く n は、なにが ほしいですか。

---

4. Ma つ mo とく n は、あかいく ruma が すきですか。

---

5. Ma つ mo とく n は、なにに ro の く ruma が すきですか。

---

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Yoshida is welcoming Karen to his house.

Yoshida san: Karen san, どうぞ。

Karen: はい、お jama し ma す。

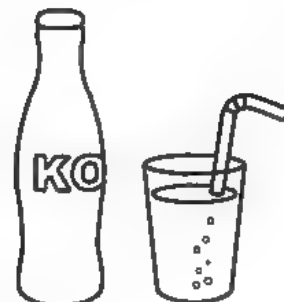
Yoshida san: の mimo のは なにが ほしいですか。

Karen: そうですね…。 Ko-ra が ほしいです。

Yoshida san: Cho っと ma ってください。

はい、どうぞ。 (serving a bottle of cola)

Karen: あ り が とう ござ い ma す。



## New words and expressions in the dialogue

### Progressive

どうぞ。

お jama し ma す。

(literally, "I will bother you," when entering someone's house)

### Kanji

どうぞ。

お邪魔します。

### English

Please come in.

I will come in.

そうですね…

Cho っと ma ってください。

(はい) どうぞ。

(when serving/giving something to someone)

そうですね…

ちょっと待って下さい。

(はい) どうぞ。

Let's see…

Please wait a moment.

Here you are.

## □ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.

Suppose someone is visiting your house. Ask him/her what he/she wants to have for a drink.



orenji ju-su?



mi ず?



rin じ ju-su?

## □ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

|      |                 |      |                |
|------|-----------------|------|----------------|
| しばふ  | grass           | ふうふ  | married couple |
| はこぶ  | to move an item | へいたい | soldier        |
| すなば  | sand box        | こうべ  | Kobe (city)    |
| ばくはつ | explosion       | ぴかぴか | shiny          |
| てっぽう | gun             |      |                |

## 6 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なにが ほしい ですか。
2. つめたい みずが ほしい です。
3. あかくない りんご wa すき ja ない です。

## 6 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたのおかあさん は なにに ro の く ruma が ほしい ですか。

**What color car does your mother want?**

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 3: こ re は あなたのおかあさん の く ruma ですか。  
Is this your mother's car?

Lesson 4: あなたのおかあさん の く ruma は し ro い ですか。  
Is your mother's car white?

Lesson 5: あなたのおかあさん は なにに ro の く ruma が すき ですか。  
What color car does your mother like?

## Vocabulary Groups

### transportation

#### Progressive

く ruma

ひこうき

で nsha

basu

ふね

さ nrinsha

sho うぼう sha

じて nsha

し n か n セ n

patoka-

#### Kana

くるま

ひこうき

でんしゃ

バス

ふね

さんりんしゃ

しょうぼうしゃ

じてんしゃ

しんかんせん

パトカー

#### Kanji

車

飛行機

電車

バス

船

三輪車

消防車

自転車

新幹線

パトカー

#### English

car

airplane

train

bus

ship; boat

tricycle

fire truck

bicycle

bullet train

patrol car



バス



じてんしゃ



ひこうき

Lesson

7

Level ①

Locations

Where is it?



## 7 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

### Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read はひふへほ, ばびぶべぼ, ぱぴぷぺぽ.
2. Understand how make a noun into a modifying word using the particle の.
3. Review vocabulary group I.

### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to say where an item is.
2. Learn when to use は (wa) or が.

### From The Teachers

1. Theこそあど diagram in Lesson 2 for will be helpful in understanding the distance relationships for ここ, そこ, and あそこ words in the どこ word group in this lesson.

## 7 New Words あたらしい ことば

| Progressive | Kana  | Kanji | English                           |
|-------------|-------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| どこ          | どこ    | どこ    | where? what place?                |
| ここ          | ここ    | ここ    | here, this place                  |
| そこ          | そこ    | そこ    | there, that place                 |
| あそこ         | あそこ   | あそこ   | over there, that place over there |
| そと          | そと    | 外     | outside                           |
| なか          | なか    | 中     | inside                            |
| resutoran   | レストラン | レストラン | restaurant                        |
| にほ n        | にほん   | 日本    | Japan                             |
| amerika     | アメリカ  | アメリカ  | America                           |
| で mo        | でも    | でも    | but                               |

## 7 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

| Progressive | Kana  | Kanji | English    |
|-------------|-------|-------|------------|
| いい、よい       | いい、よい | いい、良い | nice, good |
| おおきい        | おおきい  | 大きい   | big        |
| ちいさい        | ちいさい  | 小さい   | small      |

## 7 Word Usage ことばの つかいかた

### □ Yo くない vs いくない

In Lesson 6 you learned how to make any adjective negative by dropping the い and adding くない.

#### Examples

1. おおきい = big  
 おおきくない = not big

2. ちいさい = small  
 ちいさくない = not small

いい is an exception to the normal pattern. Both いい and よい mean "nice, good". And even though you will sometimes hear people say いくない to mean "not good" in a casual conversation, it is not commonly used and generally not considered standard Japanese. Instead, よくない should be used to say "not good".

## 7 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1. おなかが すいています。                             | I'm hungry.  |
| This literally means "My stomach is empty." |              |
| 2. おなかが いっぱい です。                            | I'm full     |
| This literally means "My stomach is full."  |              |
| 3. のどが か wa いてい ma す。                       | I'm thirsty. |
| This literally means "My throat is dry."    |              |

## 7 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Using で mo

で mo is used to connect two complete sentences together. The second sentence begins with で mo.

(Sentence 1). で mo, (Sentence 2).  
(Sentence 1). But (Sentence 2).

#### Example sentences

1. Furu-tsu は おいしいです。で mo、おなかが いっぱいです。  
Fruits are delicious But I am full.
2. のどが か wa いています。で mo、ko-ra は つ me たくない です。  
I'm thirsty. But the cola isn't cold.
3. Wa たしの konpyu-ta-は ふ ru いです。で mo、あた ra しいのは ほしくない です。  
My computer is old. But I don't want a new one.

### □ The rules for using は (wa) and が (ga)

In this lesson we will discuss some differences between は (wa) and が. This topic tends to stress out new students of Japanese, but there is nothing to worry about if you learn these simple rules!

#### #1. You can NEVER use は (wa) directly after a question word.

This is a simple rule with no exceptions.

##### INCORRECT

1. なに **は** すきですか。
2. ど re **は** いぬですか。
3. なに **い ro は** すき ですか。

##### CORRECT

1. なに **が** すきですか。
2. ど re **が** いぬですか。
1. なに **い ro が** すき ですか。



**#2. は (wa) is used for comparison and emphasis.**

Generally speaking, adjectives such as ほしい、すき、and きらい use が to mark the item being discussed. However, when comparing items or emphasizing, は is used instead of が.

**Examples (emphasis)**

1. すいかはおいしいです。

Watermelons are delicious. (You are emphasizing how tasty watermelons are.)

2. Totoro (anime character)は おおきい です！

Totoro is big!

**Examples (comparison)**

1. Mo うふが ほしいです。で mo、ma < ra は ほしくない です。

I want a blanket. But I don't want a pillow.

2. Rin が すきです。で mo、banana は きらい です。

I like apples. But I dislike bananas.

3. ねこが ほしくない です。で mo、いぬは ほしい です。

I don't want a cat. But I want a dog

**#3. は (wa) and が can both be in the same sentence.**

When は (wa) and が are in the same sentence, は marks the topic and が marks the object.

**Examples**

1. Wa たしは ねこが すきです。

I like cats.

2. Yo しおさ n は banana が ほしい です。

Yoshio wants a banana.

**#4. は (wa) should be used with new topics and conversations. ←**

Even though your sentence will still be understood if you mix up は (wa) and が, you should always use は when introducing new topics of discussion.

As discussed in Lesson 2, after the topic is introduced, it can be dropped from the rest of the conversation. But if the topic needs to be restated OR you change topics, don't forget that は (wa) should be used.

**#5. は (wa) and が are often dropped in casual conversations. →**

Until your Japanese is really good, we don't recommend that you drop any particles, but from time to time you will hear casual Japanese conversations where は (wa) or が have been dropped.

**WITH THE PARTICLE**

1. ねこが すきです。

I like cats.

2. おかあさん は なんさい ですか。

How old is your mother?

**WITHOUT THE PARTICLE**

ねこ すきです。

I like cats.

おかあさん なんさい ですか。

How old is your mother?

**7 Q&A しつもと ことえ E→J**

1. Where is it?

It's here.

It's there.

It's outside.

It's inside.

どこ ですか。

ここ です。

そこ です。

そと です。

なか です。

2. Is it here?

Yes, it's here.

No, it's not here.

No, it's over there.

ここ ですか。

はい、ここ です。

いいえ、ここ じゃ ない です。

いいえ、あそこ です。

**3. Is it over there?**

Yes, it's here.

No, it's there.

No, it's not over there

あそこですか。

はい、ここです。

いいえ、そこです。

いいえ、あそこ ja ない です。

**4. Where is the dog?**

The dog is over there.

The dog is outside.

The dog isn't inside.

いぬは どこですか。

いぬは あそこです。

いぬは そとです。

いぬは なか ja ない です。

**7 Q&A しつものと こたえ J→E****1. いいですか**

はい、いいです。

いいえ、yo くないです。

**Is it good?**

Yes, it's good.

No, it's not good.

**2. ところが いいですか。**

ここが いいです。

そが いいです。

**What place is good?**

This place is good.

That place is good.

**3. おいしい resutoran は どこですか。**

ご men なさい、わか rima せ n.

おいしい resutoran は あそこです。

あそこが いいです。

**Where is a good (-tasting) restaurant?**

I'm sorry, I don't know.

A good restaurant is over there.

That place over there is good.

**4. にほ n の く ruma が ほしい ですか。**

はい、にほ n の く ruma が だいすき です。

いいえ、ほしくない です。

**Do you want a Japanese car?**

Yes, I really like Japanese cars.

No, I don't want one.

**7 Mini Conversation ミニかいわ J→E****1. Conversation between friends.**

A: おなかが すいてい ma す。

B: Piza が ほしい ですか。

A: いいえ、すしが ほしい です。

A: I'm hungry!

B: Do you want pizza?

A: No, I want sushi.

**2. Conversation at school between friends.**

A: たなかさん せいが すき ですか。

B: だいすきです。あなたは？

A: すき ja ない です。

B: Ja あ、だ re が すき ですか。

A: こば ya し せ n せいが すき です。

A: Do you like Mrs. Tanaka?

B: I love her! What about you?

A: I don't like (her).

B: Well then, who do you like?

A: I like Mr. Kobayashi.

**3. Conversation between friends.**

A: あなたの く ruma は おおきい ですか。

B: いいえ、ちいさい です。で mo、おとうさ n の く ruma は おおきい です。

A: なに い ro ですか。

B: し ro です。

A: Is your car big?

B: No, it's small. But my father's car is big.

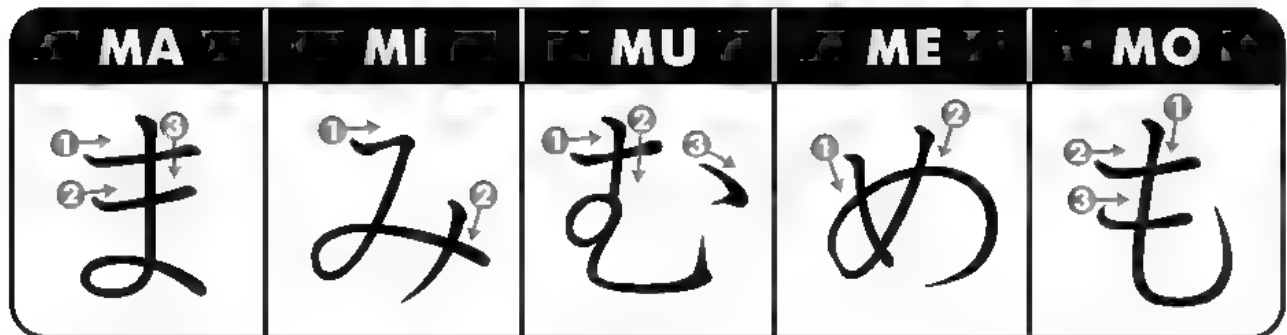
A: What color is it?

B: It's white

## Hiragana まみむめも

## ま New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



## ま Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



**ま Writing Practice れんしゅう**

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ma | ま | ま |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| mi | み | み |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| mu | む | む |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| me | め | め |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| mo | も | も |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**ま Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう**

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1.       ri (forest)  
mo
2.              じ (maple leaf)  
mo mi
3.       ri (impossible)  
mu
4.       だつ (to stand out)  
me
5.       ru (to see, to watch)  
mi
6.       がね (eye glasses)  
me
7. たべ      の (food)  
mo
8.              ru (to protect)  
ma mo

9. の           の (a drink)  
mi mo

10.      しあつい (humid)  
mu

11.      ほう (magic)  
ma

12.           ず (earthworm)  
mi mi

## ま

### Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



yo む  
to read



のみもの  
a drink



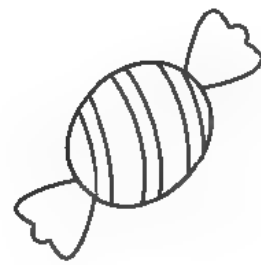
しつも n  
question



なみだ  
tears



うま  
horse



あめ  
candy

## ま

### Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

まど  
(window)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

もも  
(peach)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

むし  
(insect)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かみ  
(paper; hair)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

だめ  
(no good)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

みせ  
(store)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あたま  
(head)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

まじめ  
(serious)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

さしみ  
(sashimi)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

むすこ  
(son)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

むすめ  
(daughter)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ものさし  
(ruler)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

みじかい  
(short)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|



**ま** Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

|     |      |
|-----|------|
| に ・ | ・ mu |
| む ・ | ・ mi |
| も ・ | ・ nu |
| ぬ ・ | ・ ni |
| み ・ | ・ o  |
| ま ・ | ・ mo |
| お ・ | ・ me |
| め ・ | ・ ma |

## 7 Lesson Activities

### □ Sentence creation

Create a sentence about the pictures using **でも**. Pay attention to the use of the particles **は** and **が**.

#### Example

like →

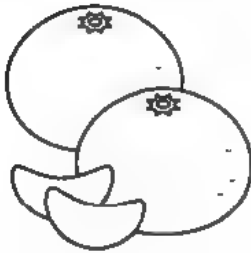


**BUT** dislike →



ex. Chikin が すきです。でも、さかなは きらいです。

like →



**BUT** don't like →



1. \_\_\_\_\_

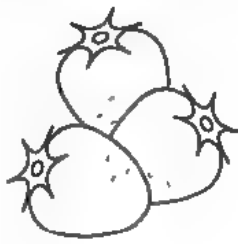
want →



**BUT** don't want →



2. \_\_\_\_\_

←are delicious **BUT**

←are not

3. \_\_\_\_\_

### □ What would you say?

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. おいしい resutoran は どこですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. あなたの いえは、どこですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

3. にほんの くらまが ほしいですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

4. みどりの りんごが すきですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

5. あなたの terebi は あたらしいですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

6. あなたの じてんsha は、なにいろですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

7. つめたいみずが ほしいですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

## □ Short dialogue 1

Mr. Tanaka is driving Mike (Maiku) home and asking which house is Mike's house.

たなかさ n: Maiku さ n のうちは ①あそこですか。

Maiku: いいえ、ちがいます。②そこです。

たなかさ n: えっ、どこですか。Wa か りません。  
③みどりのうちですか。

Maiku: いいえ、③みどりのうちは、ともだちのうちは。  
④きいろいうちがわ たしのです。

たなかさ n: ああ、わ か りました。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

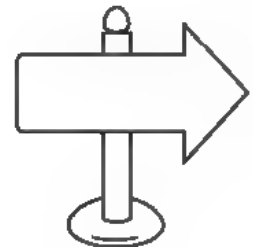
| Progressive  | Kana       | Kanji      | English               |
|--------------|------------|------------|-----------------------|
| うち           | うち         | 家          | house                 |
| えっ           | えっ         | えっ         | Eh?                   |
| ああ、わ か りました。 | ああ、わかりました。 | ああ、分かりました。 | Oh, I see / I got it. |

## □ Short dialogue 1 activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Substitute the words numbered ①~④ using the words below and try the conversation again.

- A) ① There  
② Here  
③ Brown  
④ Blue

- B) ① There  
② Over there  
③ White  
④ Gray



## □ Short dialogue 2

Mr. Tanaka is taking Mike to a sushi bar.

たなか さ n: Maiku さ n は (お)すしが すきですか。

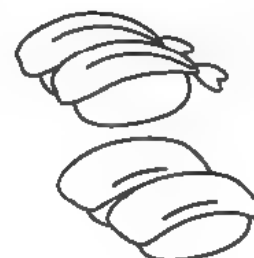
Maiku: はい、だいすきです。

たなか さ n: なにが すきですか。

Maiku: まぐ ro と えびが すきです。

たなか さ n: そうですか。Wa たしは、ひ ra めと いか が すきです。  
にほ n の お cha が、すきですか。

Maiku: いいえ。にほ n の お cha が すき ja ないです。  
でも、ko-ra は すきです。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

| Progressive | Kana | Kanji | English |
|-------------|------|-------|---------|
| まぐ ro       | まぐろ  | 鮪     | tuna    |
| えび          | えび   | 海老    | shrimp  |
| ひ ra め      | ひらめ  | 平目    | halibut |
| いか          | いか   | イカ    | squid   |

## □ Short dialogue 2 activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your most/least favorite sushi.
3. Talk about your most/least favorite beverage.

## More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new characters, but you will also learn new words.

|      |                      |       |           |
|------|----------------------|-------|-----------|
| もしもし | hello (on the phone) | しも    | frost     |
| みみ   | ear                  | め     | eye       |
| めだつ  | to stand out         | むね    | chest     |
| ひま   | free time            | むずかしい | difficult |
| もくじ  | contents             | ななめ   | diagonal  |
| まね   | imitation            |       |           |

## 7 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. あなたの いえは どこですか。
2. Wa たしは で nsha が すきです。でも、ひこうきは だいき らい です。

## 7 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたのおかあさんのかうまはどこですか。  
Where is your mother's car?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons.

Lesson 4: あなたのおかあさんのかうまはしろいですか。  
Is your mother's car white?

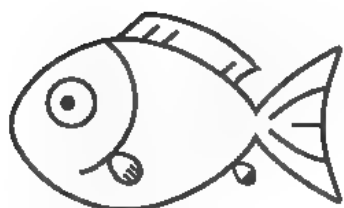
Lesson 5: あなたのおかあさんはなにいろのかうまがすきですか。  
What color car does your mother like?

Lesson 6: あなたのおかあさんはなにいろのかうまがほしいですか。  
What color car does your mother want?

## Vocabulary Groups

### J more animals

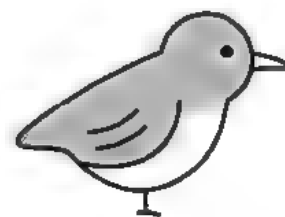
| Progressive | Kana   | Kanji | English          |
|-------------|--------|-------|------------------|
| き ngyo      | きんぎょ   | 金魚    | goldfish         |
| かめ          | かめ     | 亀     | tortoise; turtle |
| かえ ru       | かえる    | かえる   | frog             |
| ぶた          | ぶた     | 豚     | pig              |
| はと          | はと     | はと    | pigeon; dove     |
| あひ ru       | あひる    | あひる   | duck             |
| かに          | かに     | 蟹     | crab             |
| へび          | へび     | 蛇     | snake            |
| と ri        | とり     | 鳥     | bird             |
| robusuta-   | ロブスター  | ロブスター | lobster          |
| とかげ         | とかげ    | とかげ   | lizard           |
| さかな         | さかな    | 魚     | fish             |
| kyo う ryu う | きょうりゅう | 恐竜    | dinosaur         |



さかな



かえる



とり

Lesson

## 8

Level ①

## Dates and Past Tense

The calendar



## 8 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

## Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read まみむめも
2. Understand how to use the question word どこ and how the particle は is used for emphasis.
3. Review vocabulary group J.

## Lesson Goals

1. Learn the months, days of the month, and how to use でした.

## From The Teachers

1. There are three new question words in this lesson. Many people get them mixed up. Concentrate on learning them.
2. The first ten days of the month might be somewhat difficult to remember. There is no internal pattern to them, so just memorize them. They are important because they set the pattern for other areas of counting.

## 8 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. た njo うび おめでとう。 | Happy Birthday.  |
| 2. あけまして おめでとう。    | Happy New Year.  |
| 3. おめでとう。          | Congratulations. |

Note: You can also add ございます after おめでとう to sound more polite, but with friends and family it is not required.



## 8 New Words あたらしいことば

| Progressive    | Kana      | Kanji     | English                |
|----------------|-----------|-----------|------------------------|
| いつ             | いつ        | いつ        | when?                  |
| な n にち         | なんにち      | 何日        | what day of the month? |
| な n がつ         | なんがつ      | 何月        | what month?            |
| kyo う          | きょう       | 今日        | today                  |
| あした            | あした       | 明日        | tomorrow               |
| きのう            | きのう       | 昨日        | yesterday              |
| た njo うび       | たんじょうび    | 誕生日       | birthday               |
| kurumasu       | クリスマス     | クリスマス     | Christmas              |
| どく ri つ きね n び | どくりつきねんび  | 独立記念日     | Independence Day       |
| purezento      | プレゼント     | プレゼント     | present, gift          |
| goruden wi-ku  | ゴールデンウィーク | ゴールデンウィーク | Golden Week            |
| けんぼうきね n び     | けんぼうきねんび  | 憲法記念日     | Constitution Day       |
| こどものひ          | こどものひ     | 子供の日      | Children's Day         |
| ぶ n かのひ        | ぶんかのひ     | 文化の日      | Culture Day            |
| たいいくのひ         | たいいくのひ    | 体育の日      | Sports Day             |

## 8 Culture Clip: Christmas and other holidays in Japan



The Japanese celebrate Christmas every year, just as many westerners do. In Japan, though, it is a custom to eat a “Christmas cake” on Christmas Eve with the entire family, and on Christmas day they eat chicken. Let's look at some other Japanese holidays:

Constitution Day (May 3)  
Culture Day (November 3)

Children's Day (May 5)  
Sports Day (2nd Monday in October)

Golden Week, a period of consecutive holidays, happens in the first week of May. During this week, many people return to their home towns to celebrate with family.

## Days of the Month にち

|                  |              |              |      |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|------|
| 1 <sup>st</sup>  | ついたち         | ついたち         | 一日   |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup>  | ふつか          | ふつか          | 二日   |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup>  | みっか          | みっか          | 三日   |
| 4 <sup>th</sup>  | よっか          | よっか          | 四日   |
| 5 <sup>th</sup>  | いつか          | いつか          | 五日   |
| 6 <sup>th</sup>  | むいか          | むいか          | 六日   |
| 7 <sup>th</sup>  | なのか          | なのか          | 七日   |
| 8 <sup>th</sup>  | ようか          | ようか          | 八日   |
| 9 <sup>th</sup>  | ここのか         | ここのか         | 九日   |
| 10 <sup>th</sup> | とおか          | とおか          | 十日   |
| 11 <sup>th</sup> | じゅういちにち      | じゅういちにち      | 十一日  |
| 12 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうににち       | じゅうににち       | 十二日  |
| 13 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうさんにち      | じゅうさんにち      | 十三日  |
| 14 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうよっか       | じゅうよっか       | 十四日  |
| 15 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうごにち       | じゅうごにち       | 十五日  |
| 16 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうろくにち      | じゅうろくにち      | 十六日  |
| 17 <sup>th</sup> | じゅう(しち/なな)にち | じゅう(しち/なな)にち | 十七日  |
| 18 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうはちにち      | じゅうはちにち      | 十八日  |
| 19 <sup>th</sup> | じゅうくにち       | じゅうくにち       | 十九日  |
| 20 <sup>th</sup> | はつか          | はつか          | 二十日  |
| 21 <sup>st</sup> | にじゅういちにち     | にじゅういちにち     | 二十一日 |
| 22 <sup>nd</sup> | にじゅうににち      | にじゅうににち      | 二十二日 |
| 23 <sup>rd</sup> | にじゅうさんにち     | にじゅうさんにち     | 二十三日 |
| 24 <sup>th</sup> | にじゅうよっか      | にじゅうよっか      | 二十四日 |
| 25 <sup>th</sup> | にじゅうごにち      | にじゅうごにち      | 二十五日 |
| 26 <sup>th</sup> | にじゅうろくにち     | にじゅうろくにち     | 二十六日 |
| 27 <sup>th</sup> | にじゅうしちにち     | にじゅうしちにち     | 二十七日 |
| 28 <sup>th</sup> | にじゅうはちにち     | にじゅうはちにち     | 二十八日 |
| 29 <sup>th</sup> | にじゅうくにち      | にじゅうくにち      | 二十九日 |
| 30 <sup>th</sup> | さんじゅうにち      | さんじゅうにち      | 三十日  |
| 31 <sup>st</sup> | さんじゅういちにち    | さんじゅういちにち    | 三十一日 |

## 8 Cool Tools クール・ツール

The fourth day (yo っか) and the eighth day of the month (yo うか) are often confused because they sound alike.

This hint might help: the “yo” in yo っか is short, while the “yo” in yo うか has an う after it which makes it double in length. Understanding this, remember that 8 is double 4 in order to remember that the eighth day of the month has the longer sound.

On the previous page, the 14<sup>th</sup>, 20<sup>th</sup> and 24<sup>th</sup> have been highlighted. Pay attention to those three numbers, as they do not follow the pattern you might expect.

## 8 Months つき

The Japanese months are created with numbers and the Japanese kanji symbol for the moon, 月. The days of the month taught on the previous page are created with numbers and the Japanese kanji symbol for the sun, 日.

| Months つき |         |         |     |
|-----------|---------|---------|-----|
| January   | いちがつ    | いちがつ    | 一月  |
| February  | にがつ     | にがつ     | 二月  |
| March     | さんがつ    | さんがつ    | 三月  |
| April     | しがつ     | しがつ     | 四月  |
| May       | ごがつ     | ごがつ     | 五月  |
| June      | ろくがつ    | ろくがつ    | 六月  |
| July      | しちがつ    | しちがつ    | 七月  |
| August    | はちがつ    | はちがつ    | 八月  |
| September | くがつ     | くがつ     | 九月  |
| October   | じゅうがつ   | じゅうがつ   | 十月  |
| November  | じゅういちがつ | じゅういちがつ | 十一月 |
| December  | じゅうにがつ  | じゅうにがつ  | 十二月 |

## 8 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Making sentences in the past tense

でした is the past tense of です. It's used exactly like です except that it makes the sentence past tense. です means, "is, am, are," etc., and でした means "was, were," etc.

[sentence] でした。

It was [sentence]

[sentence] でしたか。

Was it [sentence]?

#### Examples Q&A

1. く ru まは あか でしたか。  
あかの く ru ま でした。

Was the car red?  
It was a red car

2. Wa たし でしたか。  
あなた でした。

Was it me?  
It was you

3. きのうは ついたち でしたか。  
ふつかは いつ でしたか。

Was yesterday the 1<sup>st</sup>?  
When was the 2<sup>nd</sup>?

### □ Saying dates with month and day of the month

When saying full dates – for example, "December 10th," or "the 20th of January" – you must always say the month first and then the day of the month.

**MONTH + DAY OF MONTH**

#### Examples

1. January 5th  
2. May 9th  
3. the 22nd of December

いちがつ いつか  
ごがつ このか  
Ju うにがつ に ju うにち

## 8 Q&A しつもと こたえ J→E

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. いつですか<br/>あしたです。<br/>Kyou oushi desu.<br/>きのうでした。</p>   | <p><b>When is it?</b><br/>It's tomorrow.<br/>It's today.<br/>It was yesterday.</p>  |
| <p>2. なににちですか。<br/>Yo okka desu.<br/>にじゅうくにちです。<br/>ついたちです。</p>                                     | <p><b>What day of the month is it?</b><br/>It's the 4th.<br/>It's the 29th.<br/>It's the 1st.</p>                             |
| <p>3. なにがつですか。<br/>しちがつです。<br/>Ju ounigatsu desu.<br/>しがつです。</p>                                    | <p><b>What month is it?</b><br/>It's July.<br/>It's December.<br/>It's April.</p>   |
| <p>4. あしたはなににちですか。<br/>あしたはじゅうににちです。<br/>あしたはさんじゅうににちです。<br/>たぶん、なのかです。</p>                         | <p><b>What day of the month is tomorrow?</b><br/>Tomorrow is the 12th.<br/>Tomorrow is the 30th.<br/>Maybe it is the 7th.</p> |
| <p>5. たのじゅうびはなにがつですか。<br/>くがつです。<br/>きのうでした。<br/>あしたです。</p>   | <p><b>What month is (your) birthday?</b><br/>It's September.<br/>It was yesterday.<br/>It's tomorrow</p>                      |
| <p>6. たなかさんのたのじゅうびはいつですか。<br/>Ju ougatsu ni jū roku ni chidesu.<br/>はちがつふつかです。<br/>ごがつじゅうよっかです。</p> | <p><b>When is Tanaka's birthday?</b><br/>It's October 26th.<br/>It's August 2nd.<br/>It's May 14th.</p>                       |

## 8 Q&A しつもと こたえ E→J

1. What is the month and day of Children's Day?  
こどものひはなにがつなににちですか。

Children's Day is May 5th.  
こどものひはごがついつかです。

**2. When is Culture Day?**

ぶんかのひはいつですか。

It's November 3rd.

ジュウいちがつみっかです。

I don't know. But my birthday is September 5th.

ワカりませぬ。でも、わたしのたんじょうびはくがついつかです。

**3. Is your father's birthday on May 10th?**

あなたのおとうさんのたんじょうびはごがつとおかですか。

Yes, it is.

はい、そうです。

No, it isn't.

いいえ、ちがいます。

No, it is on the 11th of March.

いいえ、さんがつじゅういちにちです。

**4. When is (your) birthday?**

たんじょうびはいつですか。

It's October 1st.

ジュウがつついたちです。

It's February 7th.

にがつなのかです。

**5. What was the date yesterday?**

きのうはなにちでしたか。

Yesterday was the 14th.

きのうはじゅうよっかでした。

I don't know

ワカりませぬ。

**6. Is Golden Week in July?**

Goruden wi-ku は しちがつ ですか。

No, it's in May.

いいえ、ごがつ です。

No, it's not in July.

いいえ、しちがつ ja ない です。

**7. Was yesterday the 5th?**

きのうは いつか でしたか。

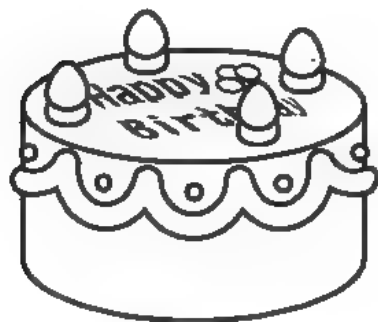
No it was the 9th.

いいえ、ここのか でした。

**8 Reading Comprehension どっかい**

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

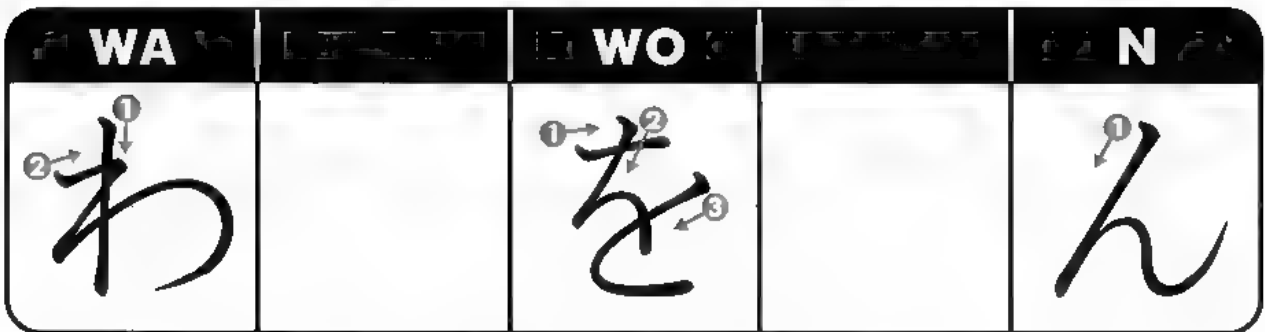
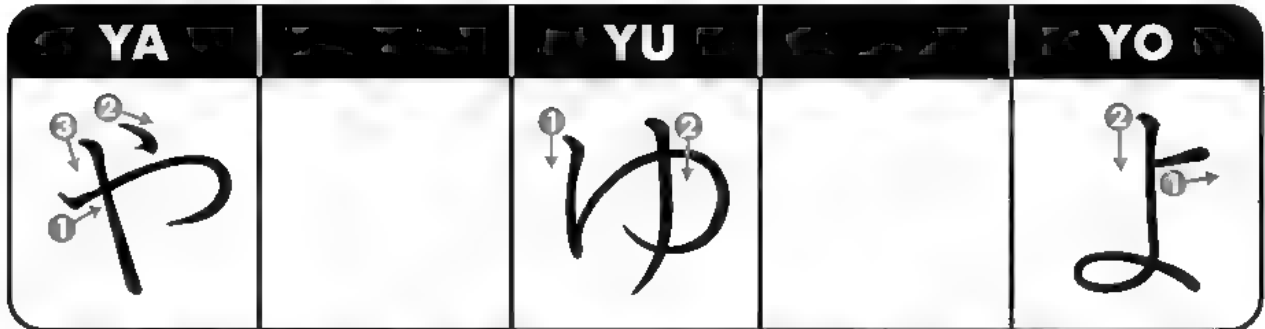
- ① Wa たしの なまえは ゆきこです。
- ② きんのうは wa たしの た njo うび でした。に ju うななさいです。
- ③ Wa たしの た njo うびは kurisumasu です。
- ④ ともだちの purezento は あかい はし でした。
- ⑤ おとうさ n の purezento は にほ n ごの ほ n でした。
- ⑥ わたしは にほ n が だいすきです。



# Hiragana やゆよわをん

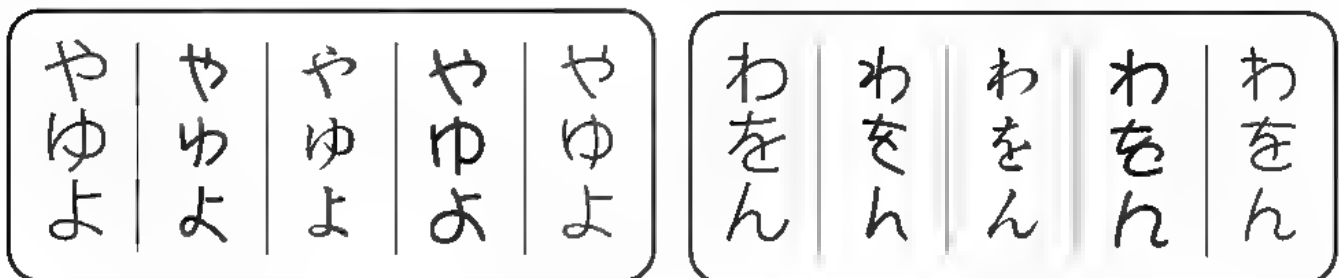
## や New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order.



## や Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.





## や Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ya | や | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| yu | ゆ | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| yo | よ | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| wa | わ | わ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| wo | を | を |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| n  | ん | ん |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## や Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. \_\_\_\_ra う (to laugh)  
wa

2. だいこ \_\_\_\_ (radish)  
n

3. みず \_\_\_\_ のむ (to drink water)  
wo

4. \_\_\_\_ru い (bad)  
wa

5. \_\_\_\_たし (me, I)  
wa

6. ほ \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_かう (to buy a book)  
n wo



わかめ  
(seaweed)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

こんや  
(tonight)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かんたん  
(easy)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

うわさ  
(rumor)

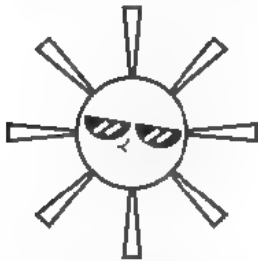
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ゆびわ  
(ring)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**や**

## Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



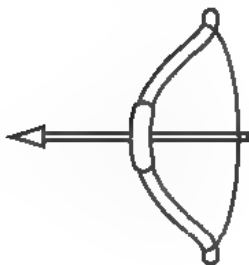
たいよう  
the sun



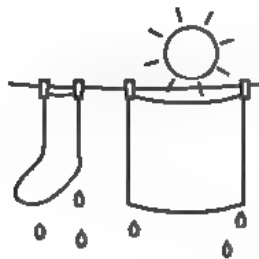
うわぎ  
jacket



ゆかた  
light kimono



ゆみや  
bow and arrow



かわかす  
to dry



じてん sha  
bicycle

## や

## Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

は・

・ yu

よ・

・ to

ゆ・

・ n

わ・

・ wo (o)

と・

・ ha

や・

・ wa

を・

・ yo

ん・

・ ya

## 8 Lesson Activities

### □ Questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. おとうさんのたん jo うびは いつですか。

---

2. Kurisumasu は、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

---

3. なんがつが すきですか。

---

4. Kyo うは、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

---

5. きのは、なんがつ なんにち でしたか。

---

6. こどものひは しちがつよっか ですか。

---

### □ Dates

Write the following dates in Japanese.

1. あなたの おかあさんの たん jo うび

---

2. けんぽう きねんび

---

3. March 15

---

4. ぶんかのひ

---

5. こどものひ

---

6. April 20

---

### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English. Then, in the space after the number write where you think the conversation is taking place and if it is polite, informal or mixed.

|   |
|---|
| 1.  |
| いまいさん: たん jo うびは いつ ですか。<br>やまださん: さんがつ に ju うさんにち です。あなたの？<br>いまいさん: わたしの たん jo うびは あしたです。<br>やまださん: おめでとう！ なんさい ですか。<br>いまいさん: さん ju う はっさい です。 |
| いまいさん:  |
| やまださん:  |
| いまいさん:  |
| やまださん:  |
| いまいさん:  |

**□ Reading comprehension questions**

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. ゆきこさんの たん jo うびは いつでしたか。

---

2. ゆきこさんは なんさいですか。

---

3. ともだちの purezento は なにい ro の はし でしたか。

---

4. おとうさんの purezento は なんでしたか。

---

5. ゆきこさんは、にほんが き ra いですか。

---

**□ Short dialogue**

While talking with Mr. Hino, Mr. Honda realizes that he forgot his girlfriend's birthday.

ほんださん: Kyo うは、なんにちですか。

ひのさん: ここのかです。

ほんださん: えっ、なのか ja ないですか。

ひのさん: いいえ、あしたは、とおかです。

ほんださん: どうしよう…。きのうは、かの jo の たん jo うびでした。

ひのさん: ほんとうですか。



**New words and expressions in the dialogue**

| Progressive | Kana     | Kanji  | English          |
|-------------|----------|--------|------------------|
| どうしよう       | どうしよう    | どうしよう  | What shall I do? |
| ほんとうですか。    | ほんとうですか。 | 本当ですか。 | Really?          |

**□ Short dialogue activities**

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about the dates for today, yesterday, and tomorrow

**□ More words you can write**

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learning new words.

|        |                |        |              |
|--------|----------------|--------|--------------|
| やね     | roof           | たんさん   | carbonation  |
| ゆうえんち  | fun park       | ようちえん  | kindergarten |
| およめさん  | bride          | しわ     | wrinkles     |
| きんようび  | Friday         | しんかんせん | bullet train |
| いわ     | rock           | うわさ    | a rumor      |
| みずを のむ | to drink water |        |              |

**8 Drill ドリル**

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Kyo うは なんにち ですか。
2. あなたの たん jo うびは なんがつ ですか。
3. あしたは はつか ですか。



## 8 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたのおかあさんのたん jo うびは いつですか。

When is your mother's birthday?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 5: あなたのおかあさんは なにい ro のく ru まが すきですか。

What color car does your mother like?

Lesson 6: あなたのおかあさんは なにい ro のく ru まが ほしいですか。

What color car does your mother want?

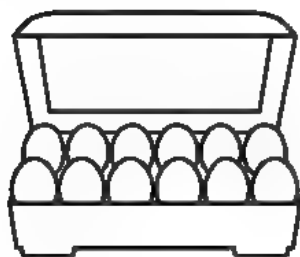
Lesson 7: あなたのおかあさんのく ru まは どこですか。

Where is your mother's car?

## Vocabulary Groups

**K** food and drink

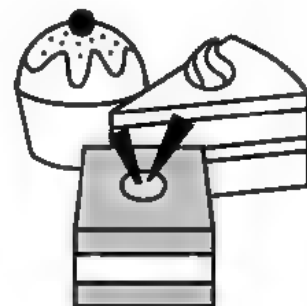
| Progressive  | Kana     | Kanji    | English     |
|--------------|----------|----------|-------------|
| たまご          | たまご      | 卵        | egg         |
| ごはん          | ごはん      | ご飯       | boiled rice |
| miruku       | ミルク      | ミルク      | milk        |
| みず           | みず       | 水        | water       |
| ju-su        | ジュース     | ジュース     | juice       |
| くり           | くり       | 栗        | chestnut    |
| pan          | パン       | パン       | bread       |
| keeki        | ケーキ      | ケーキ      | cake        |
| aisu kuri-mu | アイス・クリーム | アイス・クリーム | ice cream   |
| にんじん         | にんじん     | 人参       | carrot      |
| tomato       | トマト      | トマト      | tomato      |
| だいこん         | だいこん     | 大根       | radish      |
| たまねぎ         | たまねぎ     | 玉ねぎ      | onion       |
| こしょう         | こしょう     | こしょう     | pepper      |
| しお           | しお       | 塩        | salt        |
| えび           | えび       | 海老       | shrimp      |
| にく           | にく       | 肉        | meat        |
| poteto       | ポテト      | ポテト      | potato      |



たまご



アイス・クリーム



ケーキ

Lesson

9

Level ①

## Days, Weeks, and Years

Next week, next month



## 9 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

## Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read やゆよわをん.
2. Be able to say dates and months in Japanese and how to use でした.
3. Review vocabulary group K.

## Lesson Goals

1. Learn the days of the week and years.

## From The Teachers

1. The new words in this lesson are important in everyday conversations. Since some of the words are similar spend some extra time memorizing them.

## 9 New Words あたらしい ことば

## Progressive

なんようび

なんねん

いま

おととい

あさって

せん shu う

こん shu う

ra い shu う

せんげつ

こんげつ

ra いげつ

## Kana

なんようび

なんねん

いま

おととい

あさって

せんしゅう

こんしゅう

らいしゅう

せんげつ

こんげつ

らいげつ

## Kanji

何曜日

何年

今

一昨日

明後日

先週

今週

来週

先月

今月

来月

## English

what day of the week?

what year?

now

day before yesterday

day after tomorrow

last week

this week

next week

last month

this month

next month

|         |         |       |                |
|---------|---------|-------|----------------|
| kyo ねん  | きょねん    | 去年    | last year      |
| ことし     | ことし     | 今年    | this year      |
| rai ねん  | らいねん    | 来年    | next year      |
| せいねんがっぴ | せいねんがっぴ | 生年月日  | date of birth  |
| がんたん    | がんたん    | 元旦    | New Year's Day |
| pa-ti-  | パーティー   | パーティー | party          |

### Days of the Week ようび

|           |       |     |
|-----------|-------|-----|
| Monday    | げつようび | 月曜日 |
| Tuesday   | かようび  | 火曜日 |
| Wednesday | すいようび | 水曜日 |
| Thursday  | もくようび | 木曜日 |
| Friday    | きんようび | 金曜日 |
| Saturday  | どようび  | 土曜日 |
| Sunday    | にちようび | 日曜日 |

## 9 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. なんねん うま re ですか。 In what year were you born?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ うま re です。 I was born in the year \_\_\_\_\_.

## 9 Culture Clip: Japan's New Year

In Japan, the New Year is the most important holiday period. It is as important in Japan as Christmas is in the United States. From January 1<sup>st</sup> until one week after, Japan almost comes to a stop. Most stores and companies are closed while everyone celebrates the New Year.

## 9 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Expressing the year

ねん literally means “year.” To say a year you simply say the number of the year and add ねん to it. In Japanese, years cannot be represented as they are in English. For example, you cannot express 1998 as “nineteen—ninety—eight.” The full number must be stated.

#### Examples

the year 1980

せん kyu う hya く はち ju う ねん

the year 1801

せん はっ pya く いち ねん

the year 2010

にせん ju う ねん

the year 2017

にせん ju う なな ねん

### □ Saying complete dates including the year

Complete dates in Japanese always start with the year, then are followed by month and day of the month. Just remember the order is always from the largest time span to the smallest.

#### YEAR + MONTH + DAY OF MONTH

#### Examples

1. May 11, 2005

にせんごねん ごがつ ju う いちにち

2. January 20, 2011

にせん ju う いちねん いちがつ はつか

3. April 5, 1999

せん kyu う hya く kyu う ju う kyu う ねん しがつ いつか

4. August 30, 2015

にせん ju う ごねん はちがつ さん ju う にち

## □ Next Friday, last March, etc.

When saying things like "Monday of last week" or "May of next year", you must link the words together with の. In the following examples, の means "of". Just as in saying complete dates, the order is always from the largest time span to the smallest.

### Examples

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. らい shu うの きんようび              | Friday <u>of</u> next week                |
| 2. こん shu うの げつようび              | Monday <u>of</u> this week                |
| 3. らい げつの ju うごにち               | the 15 <sup>th</sup> <u>of</u> next month |
| 4. せん げつの ついたち                  | the 1 <sup>st</sup> <u>of</u> last month  |
| 5. ことしの さんがつ                    | March <u>of</u> this year                 |
| 6. kyo ねん の はちがつ                | August <u>of</u> last year                |
| 7. せん kyu う hya くご ju うねん の にがつ | February <u>of</u> 1950                   |
| 8. にせんご hya くねん の ro くがつ        | June <u>of</u> 2500                       |

## 9 Q&A しつもと こたえ E→J

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. What day is it?<br>It's Monday.<br>It's Friday.<br>It's Wednesday.   | なんようび ですか。<br>げつようび です。<br>きんようび です。<br>すいようび です。   |
| 2. What day is today?<br>Today is Saturday.<br>Today is Sunday.<br>I don't know.  | Kyo うは なんようび ですか。<br>Kyo うは どうようび です。<br>Kyo うは にちようび です。<br>わかりません。                            |
| 3. When is the party?<br>The party is the day after tomorrow.<br>The party is today.<br>It's Friday of next week.<br>It was yesterday.    | Pa-ti-は いつですか。<br>Pa-ti-は あさって です。<br>Pa-ti-は kyo う です。<br>Ra い shu うの きんようび です。<br>きのう でした。    |
| 4. When is Thanksgiving?<br>It's on November 27 <sup>th</sup> .<br>It was last week.<br>It was last month.<br>It's Thursday of next week. | かん sha さいは いつですか。<br>Ju ういちがつ に ju うななにち です。<br>せん shu う でした。<br>せん げつ でした。<br>らいしゅうの もくようび です。 |

## 5. What day was the Christmas of 1935?

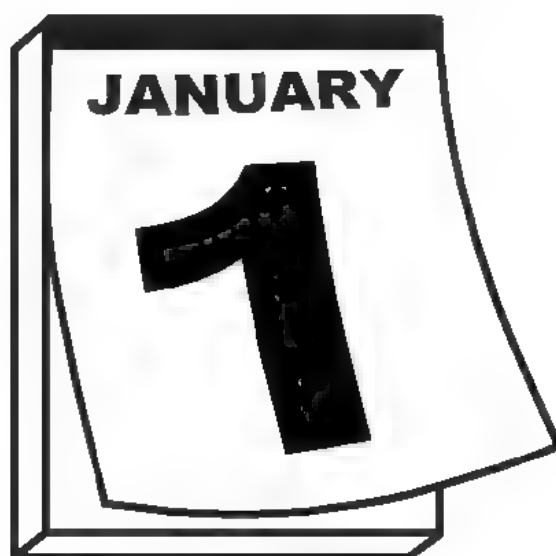
Maybe it was Thursday.  
It was Wednesday.

せん kyu う hya くさん ju うごねんの  
kurisumasu は なんようび でしたか。  
たぶん、もくようび でした。  
すいようび でした。

**9 Reading Comprehension** どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

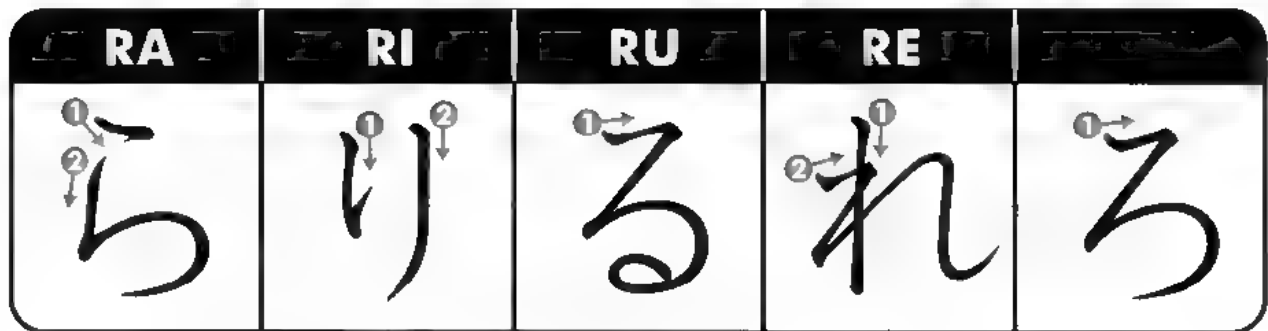
- ① Kyo うは ju うにがつ さん ju うにちです。
- ② あさっては がんたん です。
- ③ ことしの がんたんは もくようび です。
- ④ Kyo ねんの がんたんは すいようび でした。



## Hiragana らりるれろ

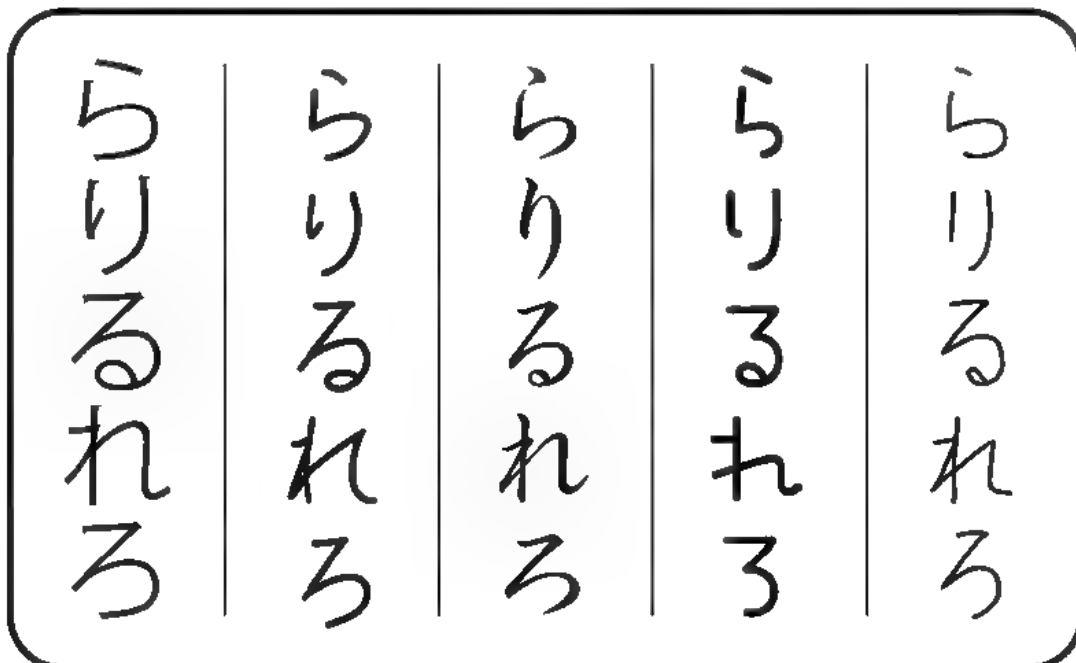
### ら New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing fast.



### ら Various Styles スタイル

Write each character as neatly as you can and compare it to the different versions.





## ら Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

|    |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ra | ら | ら |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ri | り | り |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ru | る | る |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| re | れ | れ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ro | ろ | ろ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## ら Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. あた\_\_\_\_しい (new)  
ra

2. し\_\_\_\_ (to know)  
ru

3. \_\_\_\_んあい (true love)  
re

4. \_\_\_\_んご (apple)  
ri

5. みせ\_\_\_\_ (to show)  
ru

6. \_\_\_\_ん shu う (practice)  
re

7. べん\_\_\_\_ (convenient)  
ri

8. う\_\_\_\_おい (moisture)  
ru

9. かく      んぼ (hide and seek)  
re

10. どう      (road)  
ro

11.      うか (hallway)  
ro

12. まわ      みち (detour)  
ri

## ら

## Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ねる

to sleep, go to bed



いくら

salted salmon eggs



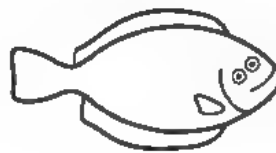
くすり

medicine



ろうそく

candle



かれい

flounder



かみなり

thunder, lightning

## ら

## Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

りか  
(science)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

よる  
(night)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

れい

(example)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

まる

(circle)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

こおり

(ice)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

あひる

(duck)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かえる

(frog)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

りんご

(apple)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

べんり

(convenient)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ひだり

(left)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

みずいろ

(light blue)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きいろ

(yellow)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ろうそく

(candle)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

さる

(monkey)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

## ら

## Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

る・

・ ru

し・

・ shi

り・

・ re

ろ・

・ i

ぬ・

・ ro

れ・

・ ra

い・

・ nu

ら・

・ ri

**9 Lesson Activities****□ Event dates**

Write the corresponding events and dates in Japanese for the following pictures.

**1.**

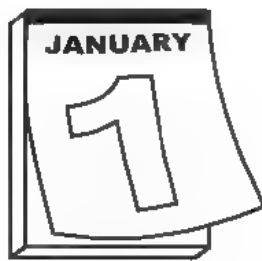
event: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

**2.**

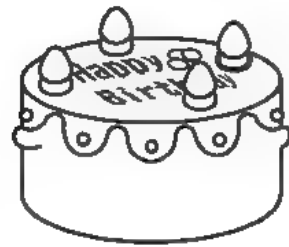
event: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

**3.**

event: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

**4.**

event: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

## ❑ Questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. あさっては なんようび ですか。

---

2. おとといは なんがつ なんにち でしたか。

---

3. たん jo うびは、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

---

4. Kyo ねんは なんねん でしたか。

---

5. せんげつの ついたちは なんようび でしたか。

---

6. らい shu うの もくようびは なんにち ですか。

---

7. せん shu うの どようびは なんにち でしたか。

---

8. らいねんは、なんねん ですか。

---

### ❑ Japanese translation

Translate the reading comprehension in this lesson into English.

|   |
|---|
| ① |
| ② |
| ③ |
| ④ |

### ❑ Short dialogue

Youko and Takahiro are talking about their birthdays.

- ようこ:           こん shu うの きんようびは わたしの たん jo うびです。
- たかひろ:        そうですか。たん jo うび おめでとう。
- ようこ:           ありがとう。
- たかひろ:        なんねんうまれですか。
- ようこ:           せん kyu う hya くなな ju うさんねんうまれです。
- たかひろ:        わたしも です。わたしの たん jo うびは  
せん kyu う hya くなな ju うさんねんの ろくがつ  
みっかです。
- ようこ:           ほんとう？
- たかひろ:        たん jo うび pa-ti-は、いつですか。
- ようこ:           こん shu うの どようびです。

**New words and expressions in the dialogue****Progressive**

ほんとう？

わたしも

**Kanji**

本当？

私も

**English**

Is that true? Really?

Me too.

**□ Short dialogue activities**

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.

Talk about your birthday (including the year) with your partner.

Use the following questions:

1. たん jo うびは いつですか / なんがつなんにちですか。
2. なんねんうまれですか。

**□ More words you can write**

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

|       |                    |       |                |
|-------|--------------------|-------|----------------|
| らんぼう  | violence           | こんらん  | confusion      |
| あらし   | a storm            | れんらく  | contact        |
| かみなり  | thunder, lightning | どろぼう  | a thief        |
| どんぐり  | acorn              | ろうじん  | old person     |
| れいぞうこ | refrigerator       | らくがき  | graffiti       |
| りゆう   | a reason           | ろうか   | hallway        |
| かいろ   | heat pad           | わすれもの | forgotten item |
| めじるし  | landmark           | めずらしい | rare (adj.)    |
| くるま   | car                |       |                |

**9****Drill ドリル**

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then it is recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Kyo うは なんようび ですか。
2. きんようびは なんにち ですか。
3. らい shu うの にちようびは わたしの ともだちの た njo うび です。
4. Kyo ねんの にがつは さむかった ですか。



## 9 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. The previous sentence was あなたの おかあさんのたんじょうびは いつですか.

ことし、あなたの おかあさんの たんじょうびは なんようび でしたか。  
On what day of the week was your mother's birthday this year?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさんは なにいろの くるまが ほしいですか。  
What color car does your mother want?

Lesson 7: あなたの おかあさんのくるまは どこですか。  
Where is your mother's car?

Lesson 8: あなたの おかあさんのたんじょうびは いつですか。  
When is your mother's birthday?

## Vocabulary Groups

### L nature

#### Progressive

やま  
あめ  
たいよう  
つき  
ゆき  
はる  
なつ  
あき  
ふゆ

#### Kanji

山  
雨  
太陽  
月  
雪  
春  
夏  
秋  
冬

#### English

mountain  
rain  
sun  
moon  
snow  
spring  
summer  
autumn, fall  
winter

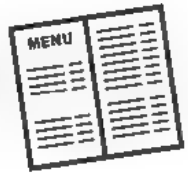
Lesson

**10**

Level ①

**Asking for Things**

Give me something, please.

**10 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read らりるれろ.
2. Review vocabulary group L.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to ask for things using "please".
2. Learn how to specify one item over another using "this" and "that".

**From The Teachers**

1. Memorize the new phrases in this lesson. They will come in handy later.

**10 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ**

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. いらっ sha ませ。  | Welcome! (at a place of business)   |
| 2. Sho う sho う おまちください。   | Please wait a moment. (very polite) |
| 3. Cho っと まってください。  | Wait a minute. (informal)           |
| 4. なにが いいですか。   | What would you like?                |
| This can also mean "what is good?" depending on the conversation.         |                                     |
| 5. _____ が いいです。  | I would like a _____.               |
| This is a response to なにが いいですか。  |                                     |
| 6. ありがとう ございました。  | Thank you very much. (past tense)   |
| This is used to say "thank you" for something that has already been done. |                                     |
| 7. どうぞ。   | Here you go. / Go ahead.            |

## 10 New Words あたらしい ことば

| Progressive  | Kana     | Kanji   | English                |
|--------------|----------|---------|------------------------|
| いくら          | いくら      | いくら     | How much?              |
| menyu-       | メニュー     | メニュー    | menu                   |
| poteto       | ポテト      | ポテト     | French fries           |
| chi-zuba-ga- | チーズバーガー  | チーズバーガー | cheeseburger           |
| piza         | ピザ       | ピザ      | pizza                  |
| supagetti-   | スパゲッティー  | スパゲッティー | spaghetti              |
| bi-fu        | ビーフ      | ビーフ     | beef                   |
| sandoicchi   | サンドイッチ   | サンドイッチ  | sandwich               |
| sando        | サンド      | サンド     | sandwich (short vers.) |
| deza-to      | デザート     | デザート    | dessert                |
| あっ！          | あっ！      | あっ！     | Oh!                    |
| おつり          | おつり      | お釣      | change                 |
| (お) のみもの     | (お) のみもの | 飲み物     | a drink                |
| たべもの         | たべもの     | 食べ物     | food                   |
| おかし          | おかし      | お菓子     | a snack                |
| みそしる         | みそしる     | 味噌汁     | miso soup              |
| おひや          | おひや      | お冷      | cold drinking water    |
| お cha        | おちゃ      | お茶      | green tea              |

## 10 Grammar ぶんぼう

### Please give me (standard)

ください is an equivalent of the English word “please.” ください is always used in a sentence and cannot be used by itself. The direct object particle を marks the object being requested.

Give me [*something*], please.

[*something*] を ください。

**Examples sentences**

1. Give me some water, please.
2. Please give me a pencil.
3. An apple, please.

みずをください。  
えんぴつをください。  
りんごをください。

**□ Please give me (polite)**

おねがい します basically means "please" or "I request of you." It's used the same way ください is used, but is a more polite way to ask for something. The object marker を marks the object being requested.

**Would you please give me [something]  
[something] を おねがい します。**

**Examples sentences**

1. みずを おねがい します。
2. えんぴつを おねがい します。
3. りんごを おねがい します。

Would you please give me some water?  
Would you please give me a pencil?  
Would you please give me an apple?

Unlike ください, おねがい します can be used alone to just say "please" or "I request."

**Example conversation**

1. A: のみものが ほしい ですか。  
B: おねがい します。  
A: はい、どうぞ。  
B: ありがとう ございました。

Do you want a drink?  
Please.  
Here you go.  
Thank you.

**□ The difference between ください and おねがい します**

ください and おねがい します are both polite. Normally you can use ください without being considered rude at all. In situations where you are requesting something from someone above you in status, or in situations where you wish to be more polite, then おねがい します should be used.

**□ The particle も**

The particle も means "too" or "also". Like the other particles you have learned, it comes after the word it is referring to. When it is applied to the topic of the sentence it takes the place of は or が completely.

**Example Conversations**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. A: なにが すきですか。<br>B: Banana が すきです。<br>りんごも すきです。                             | What do you like?<br>I like bananas.<br>I like apples <u>too</u> .                           |
| 2. A: なにが いいですか。<br>B: Robusuta とお cha をください。<br>A: わたしも お cha をください。           | What would you like?<br>Give me a lobster and tea please.<br>Give me tea <u>also</u> .       |
| 3. A: わたしは じてん sha が きらいです。<br>B: わたしも きらいです。                                   | I dislike bicycles.<br>I <u>also</u> dislike them.   |
| 4. A: わたしは 1998 ねん うまれです。<br>B: わたしも 1998 ねん うまれです。<br>みか cha んも 1998 ねん うまれです。 | I was born in 1998.<br>I was <u>also</u> born in 1998.<br>Mika was <u>also</u> born in 1998. |

**❑ A funny problem with particle choice**

Even native Japanese speakers make the common mistake of telling a girl, "You are pretty today," by saying:

Kyo うは きれいです。  
You are pretty today.

The trap is how the particle は puts emphasis on kyo う. You are saying, "As for today, you are pretty," and this implies all other days she is not pretty! Typically, you can avoid this by changing the は to a も.

Kyo うも きれいです。  
You are pretty today also.

This problem can happen anytime you give someone a compliment. So make sure to choose your particles wisely!

**❑ Sizes**

In this lesson sizes are introduced with the words *esu* (S), *emu* (M), and *eru* (L). As you can tell, the sizes are words borrowed from English. These words are the most common way to describe the sizes of clothing or the food served in fast food restaurants. To say, "large cola" you can't just string *eru* and *ko-ra* together. You must make *eru* into a の adjective by adding の. This is the pattern for all size words.

**Examples**

1. Esu の ko-ra と emu の poteto を おねがいします。  
Please give me a small cola and medium fries.
2. Eru の piza が ほしいです。  
I want a large pizza.

**10 Q&A しつもと こたえ J→E****1. Conversation between a waitress and a customer**

- A: いらっ sha ませ。
- B: おはよう ございます。ここは なにが おいしいですか。
- A: ここは chikin sando がおいしいです。Supagetti-も おいしいです。
- B: Ja あ、supagetti-を ください。
- A: Welcome to the store.
- B: Good morning. What tastes good here?
- A: The chicken sandwich is delicious. The spaghetti is also delicious.
- B: Well then, some spaghetti please

**2. Conversation in a sandwich shop**

- A: すみません、chikin su-pu は いくらですか。
- B: さん bya くん です。
- A: Ja あ、ko-ra と chikin su-pu を ください。
- A: Excuse me, how much is chicken soup?
- B: It's 300 yen.
- A: Well then, give me a cola and chicken soup, please.

**3. Conversation at a fast food restaurant counter**

- A: Chi-zuba-ga-を ください。あっ、poteto も ください。
- B: おのみものは？
- A: Ko-hi-を ください。
- B: はい、sho う sho う おまちください。
- A: A cheeseburger, please. Oh, and fries too, please.
- B: Would you like a drink?
- A: A coffee, please.
- B: Please wait a few moments

**4. Conversation in a pizza restaurant**

A: Pizaをおねがいします。Ko-raもおねがいします。

B: はい、わかりました。

A: Would you please give me some pizza? A cola also, please.

B: Okay.

**10 Q&A しつもと こたえ E→J****1. Conversation at a friend's house**

A: Would you please give me some chopsticks?

B: What?

A: Chopsticks, please.

A: おはしをおねがいします。

B: なんですか。

A: おはしをください。

**2. Conversation in a pizza restaurant**

A: Excuse me. I want a pizza. How much are they?

B: Pizzas are 1200 yen.

A: They sure are cheap.

A: すみません。Pizaがほしいです。いくらですか。

B: Pizaはせんにhyaくえんです。

A: やすいですね。

**3. Conversation in a restaurant**

A: Excuse me. What is good (delicious) today?

B: The beef soup is good today. But the chicken soup is also good.

A: Well then, give me the beef soup, please.

A: すみません。kyoうはなにがおいしいですか。

B: Kyoうはbi-fu su-puがおいしいです。でも、chikin su-puもおいしいです。

A: Jaあ、bi-fu su-puをください。

#### 4. Conversation in a restaurant

A: Some miso soup, please.

B: Ok, please wait a few minutes.

B: (5 minutes later) Here you go.

A: Some cold water also, please.

A: みそしるをおねがいします。

B: はい、しょうしょうおまちください。

B: (5 minutes later) はい、どうぞ。

A: おひやもおねがいします。

## 10 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the conversations below. If you don't understand them, review this lesson's grammar.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| The following conversation takes place in a restaurant in Japan. |  |
| <b>A customer enters a restaurant...</b>                         |  |
| Waitress:  | いらっ shai ませ！                                     |
| Customer:  | menyu-をおねがいします。                                  |
| <b>5 minutes later...</b>  |  |
| Customer:  | すみません。   |
| Waitress:  | はい。  |
| Customer:  | supagetti-をください。                                 |
| Waitress:  | おのみものはなにが いいですか。                                 |
| Customer:  | みずをください。   |
| Waitress:  | はい、しょうしょう おまちください。                               |
| <b>10 minutes later...</b>                                       |  |
| Waitress:  | はい、どうぞ   |
| Customer:  | ありがとう。お cha と ko-ra をください。                       |
| Waitress:  | はい、しょうしょう おまちください。                               |
| <b>40 minutes later...</b>                                       |  |
| Customer:  | いくら ですか  |
| Waitress:  | にせん ご hya く に ju う いちえんです。                       |
| Customer:  | はい。  |
| Waitress:  | おつりは よん hya く なな ju う kyu うえんです。<br>ありがとうございました。 |



## Compound Hiragana

The final hiragana are easy! There are only 33 official hiragana left to learn - but don't let that number scare you. They are all made up of the hiragana that you already know. Just by looking at them you should already have an idea of the sound that they represent.

### Examples

き (ki) + や (ya) = きゃ (kya)

し (shi) + ゆ (yu) = しゅ (shu)

ち (chi) + よ (yo) = ちょ (cho)

## きゃ Writing Points かくポイント

### ❑ The correct way to write compound hiragana

When writing compound hiragana, make sure that the second character is visibly smaller than the first character.

ro-maji

correct

incorrect

mya

みゃ

みや

ryo

りょ

りよ

chu

ちゅ

ちゆ

kya

きゃ

きや

pya

ぴゃ

ぴや

## □ Compound Hiragana

The following are the compound hiragana. They are created using the hiragana you already know so you should have no problem learning these.

|           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| きや<br>kya | きゅ<br>kyu | きょ<br>kyo |
| ぎや<br>gya | ぎゅ<br>gyu | ぎょ<br>gyo |
| しゃ<br>sha | しゅ<br>shu | しょ<br>sho |
| じゃ<br>ja  | じゅ<br>ju  | じょ<br>jo  |
| ちゃ<br>cha | ちゅ<br>chu | ちょ<br>cho |
| にや<br>nya | にゅ<br>nyu | にょ<br>nyo |

|           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| ひや<br>hya | ひゅ<br>hyu | ひょ<br>hyo |
| びや<br>bya | びゅ<br>byu | びょ<br>byo |
| ぴや<br>pya | ぴゅ<br>pyu | ぴょ<br>pyo |
| みや<br>mya | みゅ<br>myu | みょ<br>myo |
| りや<br>rya | りゅ<br>ryu | りょ<br>ryo |

## きや Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice

KYA

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| き | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| き | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| き | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

KYU

KYO

GYA

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ぎ | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ぎ | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ぎ | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

GYU

GYO

SHA

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| し | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| し | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| し | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

SHU

SHO

JA

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| じ | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| じ | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| じ | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

JU

JO

CHA

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ち | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ち | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ち | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

CHU

CHO

NYA

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| に | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| に | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| に | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

NYU

NYO

HYA

HYU

HYO

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ひ | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ひ | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ひ | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

BYA

BYU

BYO

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| び | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| び | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| び | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

PYA

PYU

PYO

|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| ぴ | や |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ぴ | ゆ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ぴ | よ |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**MYA**

|     |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| mya | mya |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| myu | myu |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| myo | myo |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**MYU****MYO****RYA**

|     |     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| rya | rya |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ryu | ryu |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ryo | ryo |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**RYU****RYO**

**きや Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう**

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. とう__く (arrival)<br>cha        | 2. さん__く (three hundred)<br>bya       |
| 3. と__かん (library)<br>sho        | 4. __う__う (cow's milk)<br>gyu nyu     |
| 5. さん__く (mountain range)<br>mya | 6. __うばい (business, commerce)<br>sho  |
| 7. __うたん (carpet)<br>ju          | 8. でん__う (sales slip, voucher)<br>pyo |
| 9. __うだい (siblings)<br>kyo       | 10. __う__う (dinosaur)<br>kyo ryu      |
| 11. __うがく (study abroad)<br>ryu  | 12. __うどん (beef bowl)<br>gyu          |

**きや Words You Can Write かける ことば**

Write the following words using the hiragana compounds that you've learned in this lesson. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

ちょう  
(butterfly)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きゅう  
(nine)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

びょうき  
(sick)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

じゅう  
(ten)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

りゅう  
(dragon)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

ぎゃく  
(reverse)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

みょうじ  
(last name)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

しゅうり  
(repair)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きょく  
(a song)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きょうと  
(Kyoto)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

りょこう  
(travel)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

かいしゃ  
(company)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

でんしゃ  
(train)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

きんぎょ  
(gold fish)

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

ちやわん  
(bowl)

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|

**きや** Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



ちきゅうぎ  
globe



しゅう  
state



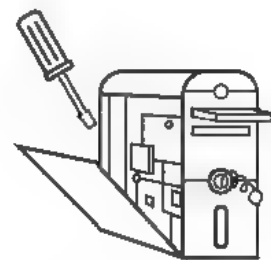
おちゃ  
tea



べんきょう  
study



ちゅうしゃ  
shot



しゅうり  
repair



**きや** Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

ぎゃ・

・nyu

みよ・

・shu

しゅ・

・rya

ぴょ・

・ja

りゃ・

・myo

ちょ・

・pyo

じゃ・

・cho

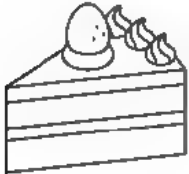
にゅ・

・gya

## 10 Lesson Activities

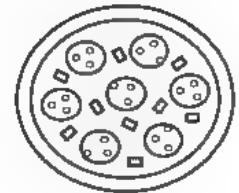
### Grammar drill 1

How would you order the following items at a restaurant? Use both ~をおねがいします and ~をください. Use と (and) if necessary.



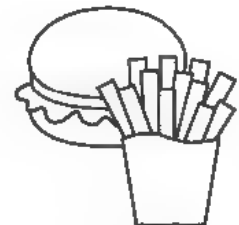
1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_



### Grammar drill 2

Answer the following questions in Japanese. Then add a second sentence using the particle も (also) or でも (but) as shown in the examples.

Ex. いぬが すきですか。

- はい、いぬが すきです。ねこも すきです。
- いいえ、いぬが きらいです。ねこも きらいです。
- いいえ、いぬが きらいです。でも、ねこは すきです。

1. あたらしい terebi が ほしいですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. はるが すきですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Ko-ra は、おいしいですか。

---

4. あなたの くるまは、おおきいですか。

---

### ☐ Conversation creation

Write an original conversation using the concepts learned in this lesson. Test yourself by using all of the hiragana that you have learned in this course.

|  |
|--|
|  |
|  |
|  |
|  |

### ☐ Japanese translation

Translate the reading comprehension in this lesson into English.

| A customer enters a restaurant... |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| Waitress:                         | _____ |
| Customer:                         | _____ |
| 5 minutes later...                |       |
| Customer:                         | _____ |
| Waitress:                         | _____ |
| Customer:                         | _____ |
| Waitress:                         | _____ |
| Customer:                         | _____ |
| Waitress:                         | _____ |
| 10 minutes later...               |       |
| Waitress:                         | _____ |
| Customer:                         | _____ |
| Waitress:                         | _____ |

40 minutes later...

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

### □ Short dialogue

Sayuri and Chieko are at a Japanese restaurant ordering food and drinks.

**Waitress:** いらっしゃいませ。Menu-を どうぞ。

**さゆり:** ここは てんぷらが おいしいです。

**ちえこ:** そうですか。じゃあ、てんぷらが いいです。

**さゆり:** わたしも てんぷらが すきです。でも、きょうは とんかつが いいです。

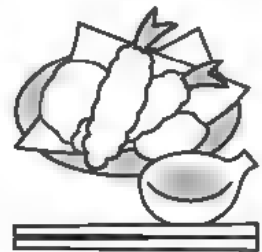
**ちえこ:** じゃあ、てんぷらと とんかつを おねがいします。

**Waitress:** かしこまりました。おのみものは なにが よろしいですか。

**さゆり:** Aisu ti- を ください。

**ちえこ:** わたしは おちゃを おねがいします。

**Waitress:** かしこまりました。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

#### Progressive

てんぷら  
とんかつ  
なにが よろしいですか。\*  
かしこまりました。  
aisu ti-

#### Kanji

天ぷら  
豚カツ  
何が よろしいですか。  
かしこまりました。  
アイ스티ー

#### English

deep-fried vegetables or seafood  
pork cutlet  
What would you like?  
Certainly; Very well.  
iced tea

\* more polite version of なにが いいですか ?

### ❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Imagine you are at a restaurant. Practice ordering food and a drink.

### ❑ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana but you will also learn new words.

おきゃくさん    a customer or guest  
じょうだん    a joke  
かいじゅう    a monster

しゅじゅつ    surgery  
じゅうたん    carpet  
はっぴょう    an announcement

## 10 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Supagetti-をください。
2. Menyu-を おねがいします。みずも おねがいします。
3. なにが いいですか。

## 10 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In this lesson we are starting a new sentence to build on. Watch it grow and transform as new concepts are introduced.

**Sando をください。**  
**A sandwich, please.**

## Vocabulary Groups

### M direction words

#### Progressive

みぎ  
ひだり  
うえ  
した  
きた  
ひがし  
みなみ  
にし

#### Kanji

右  
左  
上  
下  
北  
東  
南  
西

#### English

right  
left  
up  
down  
north  
east  
south  
west

### N things around the house II

#### Progressive

かさ  
いえ  
でんわ  
かぎ  
いす  
ごみばこ  
toire

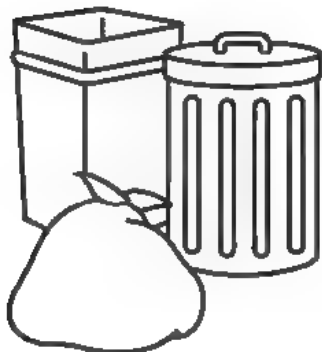
#### Kanji

傘  
家  
電話  
鍵  
椅子  
ごみ箱  
トイレ

#### English

umbrella  
house  
telephone  
key  
chair  
trash can  
toilet

ごみばこ



いえ



Lesson

**11**

Level ①

**Counting Objects**

Various counting units

**11 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read compound ひらがな
2. Understand Japanese basic counting and how to ask for things.
3. Review vocabulary groups M and N.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to count various objects depending on their characteristics.

**From The Teachers**

1. Pay special attention to the counters taught in this lesson. You will sound strange if you mix them up. Also, if you are not strong in the area of counting, now would be the time to review the Pre-Lesson on counting.

**11 Explanation せつめい**

Counting things in Japanese is not quite the same as in English. In Japanese, things are counted differently based on their shape or classification. Wow, that *is* strange! ...Or so many people say. If you think about it, we have a similar system in English.

We also count things differently based on what the item is. For example, “one *slice* of pizza,” “two *head* of cattle,” “a *school* of fish” or “a *flock* of birds” are all things we say in English without batting an eye. In this lesson we will introduce four of the most commonly used Japanese counting systems.

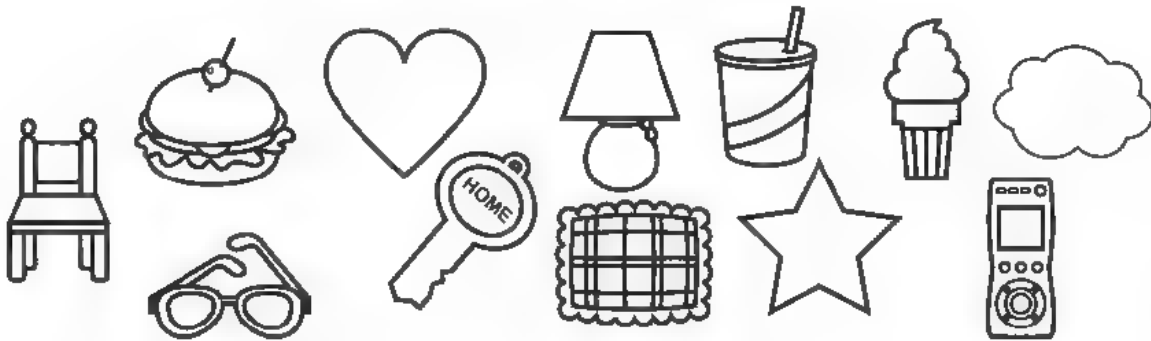
# 11 Counters カウンター

| How Many ? | General / Abstract Objects | Small / Round General Objects | Long / Cylindrical Objects | Thin and Flat Objects |
|------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
|            | いくつ?                       | なんこ?                          | なんぼん?                      | なんまい?                 |
| 1          | ひとつ                        | いっこ                           | いっぽん                       | いちまい                  |
| 2          | ふたつ                        | にこ                            | にほん                        | にまい                   |
| 3          | みっつ                        | さんこ                           | さんぼん                       | さんまい                  |
| 4          | よっつ                        | よんこ                           | よんぼん                       | よんまい                  |
| 5          | いっつ                        | ごこ                            | ごほん                        | ごまい                   |
| 6          | むっつ                        | ろっこ                           | ろっぽん                       | ろくまい                  |
| 7          | ななつ                        | ななこ                           | ななぼん                       | ななまい                  |
| 8          | やっつ                        | はっこ                           | はっぽん / はちほん                | はちまい                  |
| 9          | ここのつ                       | きゅうこ                          | きゅうぼん                      | きゅうまい                 |
| 10         | とお                         | じゅっこ<br>じっこ                   | じゅっぽん<br>じっぽん              | じゅうまい                 |
| 11         | じゅういっこ                     | じゅういっこ                        | じゅういっぽん                    | じゅういちまい               |
| 12         | じゅうにこ                      | じゅうにこ                         | じゅうにほん                     | じゅうにまい                |
| 13         | じゅうさんこ                     | じゅうさんこ                        | じゅうさんぼん                    | じゅうさんまい               |
| 14         | じゅうよんこ                     | じゅうよんこ                        | じゅうよんぼん                    | じゅうよんまい               |
| 15         | じゅうごこ                      | じゅうごこ                         | じゅうごほん                     | じゅうごまい                |
| 16         | じゅうろっこ                     | じゅうろっこ                        | じゅうろっぽん                    | じゅうろっまい               |
| 17         | じゅうななこ                     | じゅうななこ                        | じゅうななぼん                    | じゅうななまい               |
| 18         | じゅうはっこ                     | じゅうはっこ                        | じゅうはっぽん                    | じゅうはっまい               |
| 19         | じゅうきゅうこ                    | じゅうきゅうこ                       | じゅうきゅうぼん                   | じゅうきゅうまい              |
| 20         | にじゅっこ<br>にじっこ              | にじゅっこ<br>にじっこ                 | にじゅっぽん<br>にじっぽん            | にじゅっまい                |
| 100        | ひゃっこ                       | ひゃっこ                          | ひゃっぽん                      | ひゃくまい                 |
| 1000       | せんこ                        | せんこ                           | せんぼん                       | せんまい                  |

**NOTE:** As you can see, after ten items, each counter continues into infinity following the pattern of the first ten numbers and the basic rules of counting. After ten items, the **いくつ** counter follows the pattern of the **なんこ** counter.

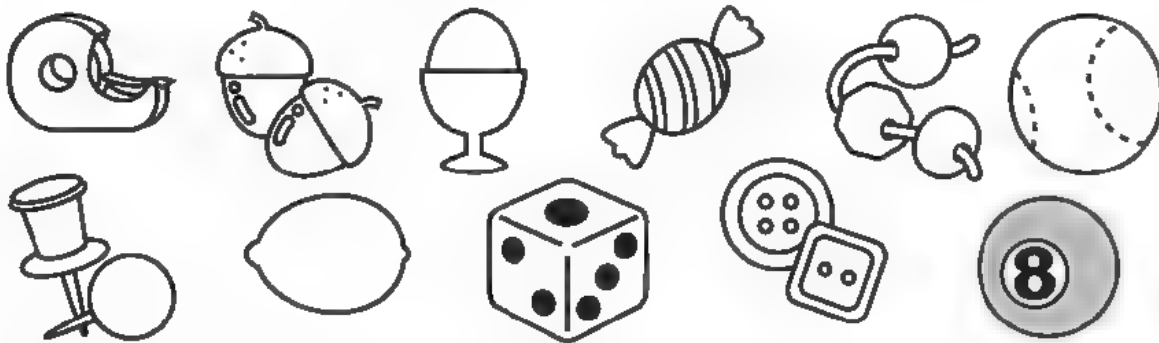


## General / Abstract Objects いくつ



The **いくつ** counter is the most common and versatile counter. It can be used to count almost anything – physical objects as well as abstract objects, such as problems or ideas. It cannot be used to count people, animals, or animated living creatures, and is not normally used to count large objects such as airplanes. Many Japanese use this counter even though a more proper counter exists. Always try to use the correct counter to identify what you are counting, but when in doubt use this counter. This counter changes to the **なんこ** counter after 10.

## Round / General Objects なんこ



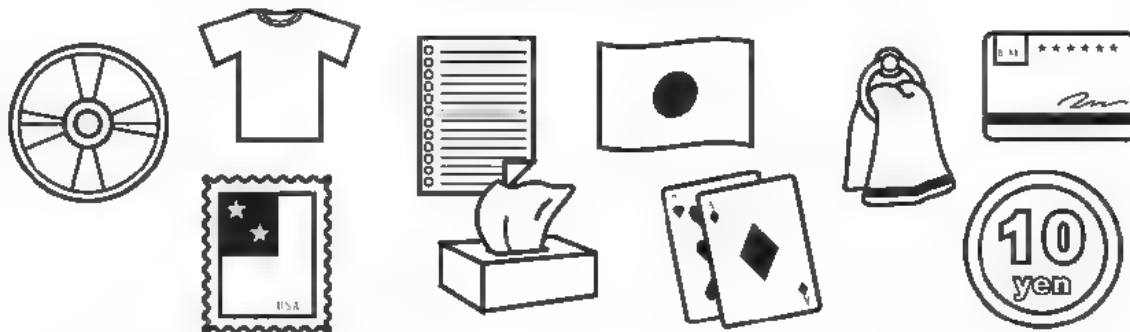
The **なんこ** counter is used when counting round objects such as fruit, balls, etc... The objects being counted do not have to be perfectly round. The **なんこ** counter can also be used as a general counter like **いくつ**. It cannot, however, be used to count abstract objects in the way that **いくつ** is used.

### Long / Cylindrical Objects なんぼん



The なんぼん counter is used to count objects that are long and cylindrical in shape, such as bottles of cola, pens, legs and flowers (due to the stem). It is also used to count some items that might not seem to be long or cylindrical, such as video cassettes, teeth, and numbers of flights. Don't be surprised to hear this counter in a variety of situations.

### Thin / Flat Objects なんまい



The なんまい counter is used to count objects that are thin and flat, such as paper, tickets, plates, and compact discs. It cannot be used to count books, magazines, etc. These use the published materials counter さつ.

## 11 New Words あたらしい ことば

### Progressive

いくつ

なんこ

なんぼん

### Kana

いくつ

なんこ

なんぼん

### Kanji

いくつ

何個

何本

### English

How many things?

How many round objects?

How many cylindrical objects?

|          |       |       |                                 |
|----------|-------|-------|---------------------------------|
| なんまい     | なんまい  | 何枚    | How many thin and flat objects? |
| かみ       | かみ    | 紙     | paper                           |
| chiketto | チケット  | チケット  | tickets                         |
| はな       | はな    | 花     | flowers                         |
| はた       | はた    | 旗     | flag                            |
| ほし       | ほし    | 星     | star (in the sky)               |
| karenda- | カレンダー | カレンダー | calendar                        |

## 11 Grammar ぶんぼう

### □ The counters and particles

In the previous lesson about **ください** and **おねがいします**, you learned that the object particle **を** follows the item being requested. However, this is only true for the object of a sentence and NOT the counter. No matter which counter is being used, particles are not necessary after the counters.

#### Examples

##### (general, abstract objects)

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ひとつください。      | One, please.           |
| 2. まくらを みっつください。 | Three pillows, please. |
| 3. いすを いつつください。  | Five chairs, please.   |

##### (round, general objects)

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 4. よんこください。           | Four, please.        |
| 5. りんごを にこください。       | Two apples, please.  |
| 6. Orenji を じゅっこください。 | Ten oranges, please. |

##### (long, cylindrical objects)

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 7. ろっぽんください。          | Six, please.           |
| 8. えんぴつを いっぽんください。    | One pencil, please.    |
| 9. Banana を ななほんください。 | Seven bananas, please. |

##### (thin, flat objects)

- |                     |                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 10. よんまいください。       | Four, please.                         |
| 11. Piza を にまいください。 | Two slices of pizza, please.          |
| 12. かみを ごひゃくまいください。 | Five hundred pieces of paper, please. |

## □ More

あと means "more," "else," "in addition" and sometimes "other." It is placed in front of numbered things in the following ways. It is okay to add は after あと.

### Example Q&A

1. あと いくら ですか。

How much more is it?

あと ごひゃくえん です。

It's five hundred yen more.

2. あとは どの resutoran が おいしいですか。

What other restaurant is delicious?

わたしの hoteru の resutoran が おいしいです。

The restaurant in my hotel is delicious.

### Example Conversations

1. Conversation between friends.

A: なにが すきですか。

What do you like?

B: すしと pizza が すきです。

I like sushi and pizza.

A: あと、なにが すきですか。

What else do you like?

B: あとは、さしみが すきです。

In addition, I like sashimi

2. Conversation between friends.

A: あとは なにが いいですか。

What else would you like?

B: みずと supu-n をください。

Some water and a spoon, please.

A: はい しょうしょう おまちください。

Please wait a few moments.

## 11 Q&A しつものと こたえ E→J

1. How many cups are there?

There are five cups.

There is one.

Koppu は いくつ ですか。

Koppu は ひとつ です。

ひとつ です。

2. How many oranges are there?

There are six oranges.

There are three.

Orenji は なんこ / いくつ ですか。

Orenji は ろっこ / むつつ です。

みつつ です。 / さんこ です。

**3. How many pencils are there?**

There are two pencils.

There are 22 pencils.

There are ten.

えんぴつは なんぼん ですか。

えんぴつは にほん です。

えんぴつは にじゅうにほん です。

じゅうぼん です。

**4. How many tickets are there?**

There are seven tickets.

There are 100 tickets.

There are twelve.

Chiketto は なんまい ですか。

Chiketto は ななまい です。

Chiketto は ひゃくまい です。

じゅうにまいです。

**5. How many pink flowers are there?**

There is one pink flower.

There are three.

Pinku のはなは なんぼん ですか。

Pinku のはなは いっぽん です。

さんぼん です。

**6. How many purple stars are there?**

There are 39 purple stars.

There are 70 purple stars.

むらさきの ほしは いくつ ですか。

むらさきの ほしは さんじゅうきゅうこです。

むらさきの ほしは ななじゅうこです。

**7. What would you like?**

Three slices of pizza please.

Some water and a banana please

なにが いいですか。

Piza を さんまい ください。

みずと banana を いっぽん ください。

**11 Q&A しつもん と こたえ J→E****1. Karenda—は なんまい ですか。**

ななじゅういちまい です。

Hyaくにじゅうごまい です。

いちまん よんせんまい です。

**How many calendars are there?**

There are 71.

There are 125.

There are 14,000.

**2. Ko-ra は なんぼん ですか。**

はっぽん です。

よんぼん です。

**How many colas are there?**

There are eight.

There are four.

**3. Ko-ra は あと なんぼん ですか。**

あと ろっぽん ください。

あと いっぽん ください。

**How many more cans of cola?**

Six more cans, please.

One more can, please.

**4. あとは いくつが いいですか。**

あと ふたつ ください。

あと じゅうろっこ ください。

**How many more would you like?**

Two more, please.

Sixteen more, please.

5. Banana は なんぼん ですか。  
じゅうごほん です。  
たぶん ろっぽん です。

**How many bananas are there?**

There are 15.

Maybe there are six.

6. Piza は なんまい ほしい ですか。  
さんまい ほしい です。  
Piza は ほしくない です。

**How many pieces pizzas do you want?**

I want three.

I don't want any pizza.

## 11 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ

### 1. Conversation at a ticket booth for a concert

A: Four tickets, please.

B: Okay.

A: Oh! Two more tickets, please.

B: Okay. Seven, right?

A: No, that's wrong. Six tickets, please.

A: Chiketto を よんまい ください。

B: はい。

A: あっ、あと にまい ください。

B: はい。ななまい ですね。

A: いいえ、ちがいます。chiketto を ろくまい ください。

### 2. Conversation at a drink stand at the beach

A: Please give me some cola.

B: How many?

A: Two, please.

A: Ko-ra を ください。

B: なんぼん ですか。

A: にほん ください。

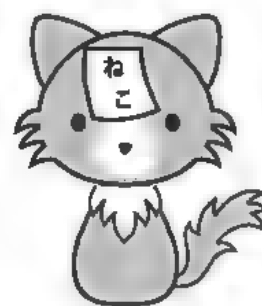
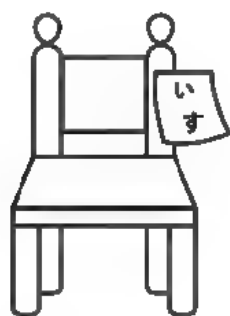
## Hiragana: The Next Step

Congratulations on learning hiragana!

Here are some tips to help you reinforce what you have learned:

### Let's put hiragana in our daily lives!

Write words in hiragana on "post it" notes and then stick them on items around your house. You can even write しお and こしょう on your salt and pepper shakers using a permanent marker. This will enforce your skills even when you aren't thinking about it.



### Read manga!

Some manga (Japanese comics) and children's books will have small hiragana next to any kanji used in dialogue. When hiragana is used in this way it is called "furigana". Look for furigana when purchasing manga to help you study. It's like Japanese on training wheels!



### Keep on learning!

Your next step is to learn katakana! You have come this far, so keep up the momentum. We are sure you will also enjoy learning katakana in "Japanese From Zero!" Book 2.

## 11 Lesson Activities

### □ Japanese questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Write all the answers in hiragana (except for the katakana words).

1. うまの あしは なんぼん ですか。

---

2. Amerika の はたの ほしは なんこ ですか。

---

3. えんぴつが なんぼん ほしいですか。

---

4. Piza が なんまい ほしいですか。

---

### □ English questions

Translate then answer the following questions in Japanese. Write all your answers in hiragana.

1. How many white stars are there?



---

2. How many pencils are there?



---

3. How many fingers are there? (including thumbs!)



---

4. How many flags are there?



---




5. How many clocks are there? 

---

### □ Grammar drill

How would you ask for the following items? Write the sentences with **お願いします** and **ください**. Make sure you use an appropriate counter and amount in each sentence.

Ex.  Keeki を みっつ ください。  
Keeki を みっつ お願いします。



1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

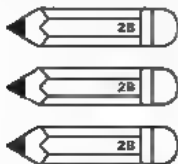


2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

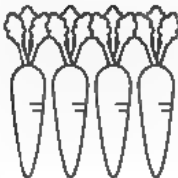


cheeseburgers

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## ❑ Short dialogue

Jon and Masami are at a sushi bar.

Sushi chef: いらっしゃい。

Jon: すみません、いくらと はまちを ください。

Sushi chef: はい！ そちらの おきゃくさんは？

まさみ: わたしは おみそしるを ひとつと おちゃを  
おねがいします。きょうの おすすめは なんですか。

Sushi chef: そうですね。きょうは あまえびが おいしいです。

まさみ: じゃあ、それを ひとつ、ください。

Jon: あと、えだまめも ください。

まさみ: わたしも えだまめが ほしいです。  
おさらを にまい、おねがいします。

Sushi chef: はい、わかりました！



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

#### Progressive

いらっしゃい  
いくら  
はまち  
おきゃくさん  
おすすめ  
あまえび  
えだまめ  
そちら

#### Kanji

いらっしゃい  
いくら  
ハマチ  
お客さん  
お薦め  
あまえび  
枝豆  
そちら

#### English

welcome (rough form of いらっしゃいませ)  
salmon eggs  
yellow tail fish  
customer  
recommendation  
sweet shrimp  
green soybeans  
polite version of そっち (there)

## ❑ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Practice ordering things at a sushi bar.

**11 Drill ドリル**

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Ko-ra をさんぽん ください。
2. リんごをじゅっこ おねがいします。
3. かみを ごまい ください。
4. いくつ ほしいですか。
5. あと ここのつ ください。

**11 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり**

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

**Sando をよつつ ください。**  
**Four sandwiches, please.**

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lesson:

Lesson 10: Sando をください。  
A sandwich, please.

## Vocabulary Groups

### O at school

#### Progressive

せんせい  
ほん  
じしょ  
おてあらい  
えんぴつ  
おんがく

#### Kanji

先生  
本  
辞書  
お手洗い  
鉛筆  
音楽

#### English

teacher  
book  
dictionary  
restroom  
pencil  
music

### P at the office, etc.

#### Progressive

けいたいでんわ  
おかね  
ko-hi-  
たばこ  
めがね  
pasokon  
no-to pasokon  
めいし

#### Kanji

携帯電話  
お金  
コーヒー  
たばこ  
めがね  
パソコン  
ノートパソコン  
名刺

#### English

cellular phone  
money  
coffee  
cigarettes  
glasses  
PC (computer)  
laptop computer  
business card

### Q insects

#### Progressive

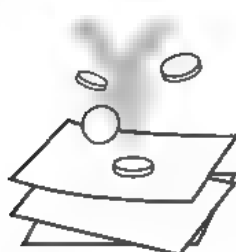
ごきぶり  
あり  
はえ

#### Kanji

ごきぶり  
蟻  
蠅

#### English

cockroach  
ant  
house fly



おかね



コーヒー



パソコン

Lesson

**12**

Level ①

**Japanese Verbs**

Polite verb conjugation



Welcome to Japanese verbs. This is where Japanese becomes really fun! We will start out slowly with just four verbs and four forms. Learn them well and you should have no problem grasping the verb forms that follow.

## 12 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

### Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read all ひらがな.
2. Review vocabulary group O, P and Q.

### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to conjugate verbs into the polite forms.
2. Learn how to use the particle に.

### From The Teachers

1. The dictionary form of a verb is the most important form. Put effort into memorizing them and all other verb forms that come up in other lessons.

## 12 New Words あたらしい ことば

### Progressive

なにご

なにじん

rosanzerusu

rasu begasu

shikago

kariforunia

kanada

かんこく

### Kana

なにご

なにじん

ロサンゼルス

ラスベガス

シカゴ

カリフォルニア

カナダ

かんこく

### Kanji

何語

何人

ロサンゼルス

ラスベガス

シカゴ

カリフォルニア

カナダ

韓国

### English

what language?

what nationality?

Los Angeles

Las Vegas

Chicago

California

Canada

Korea

|       |       |    |                   |
|-------|-------|----|-------------------|
| ちゅうごく | ちゅうごく | 中国 | China             |
| ぎんこう  | ぎんこう  | 銀行 | bank              |
| ふく    | ふく    | 服  | clothing, clothes |
| ~し    | ~し    | ~市 | ~ City            |
| ~しゅう  | ~しゅう  | ~州 | ~ State           |
| ~けん   | ~けん   | ~県 | ~ Prefecture      |
| ~ご    | ~ご    | ~語 | ~ language        |
| ~じん   | ~じん   | ~人 | ~ nationality     |

## 12 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

- |                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. おひさしぶりです。      | It has been a long time.      |
| 2. なにごが はなせますか。   | What languages can you speak? |
| 3. _____ が はなせます。 | I can speak _____.            |

## 12 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Polite versus informal speaking

In Japanese, it is common to use polite language with people you don't know, or who have higher social status than yourself. For example, when speaking to a stranger on the street or to your boss, you should use polite verb forms.

However, if you are talking to your family, friends, or people that are of lower or equal status than you, speaking informally will be more natural. Until your Japanese level becomes more advanced, we suggest that you stick to polite Japanese in order to form good speaking habits.

### □ Conjugating verbs into the polite form

The "dictionary form" of a verb is the only version that is in the dictionary. It is the most basic form of the verb without any conjugation. From this form of the verb, you can conjugate the verbs into many other forms using simple patterns. Let's look at the four verbs we will learn in this lesson:

| Dictionary Form | English Verb  | Verb Type |
|-----------------|---|-----------|
| いく              | to go   | regular   |
| くる              | to come   | irregular |
| かえる             | to return, go back, go home,<br>come back, come home etc. | regular   |
| わかる             | to understand, know                                       | regular   |

To conjugate the dictionary forms into other forms, the hiragana chart will be useful. This is a shortened chart – not all the hiragana are listed.

|                 |                 |                 |                 |                  |                  |                 |                 |                |               |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| ら <sub>ra</sub> | ま <sub>ma</sub> | ば <sub>ba</sub> | な <sub>na</sub> | た <sub>ta</sub>  | さ <sub>sa</sub>  | が <sub>ga</sub> | か <sub>ka</sub> | あ <sub>a</sub> | <b>あ form</b> |
| り <sub>ri</sub> | み <sub>mi</sub> | び <sub>bi</sub> | に <sub>ni</sub> | ち <sub>chi</sub> | し <sub>shi</sub> | ぎ <sub>gi</sub> | き <sub>ki</sub> | い <sub>i</sub> | <b>い form</b> |
| る <sub>ru</sub> | む <sub>mu</sub> | ぶ <sub>bu</sub> | ぬ <sub>nu</sub> | つ <sub>tsu</sub> | す <sub>su</sub>  | ぐ <sub>gu</sub> | く <sub>ku</sub> | う <sub>u</sub> | <b>う form</b> |
| れ <sub>re</sub> | め <sub>me</sub> | べ <sub>be</sub> | ね <sub>ne</sub> | て <sub>te</sub>  | せ <sub>se</sub>  | げ <sub>ge</sub> | け <sub>ke</sub> | え <sub>e</sub> | <b>え form</b> |
| ろ <sub>ro</sub> | も <sub>mo</sub> | ぼ <sub>bo</sub> | の <sub>no</sub> | と <sub>to</sub>  | そ <sub>so</sub>  | ご <sub>go</sub> | こ <sub>ko</sub> | お <sub>o</sub> | <b>お form</b> |

### The forms

Notice how the rows on the chart above have been labeled あ, い, う, え, お form. You may have noticed that every new verb in this lesson ends with a hiragana in the う form. This isn't just a coincidence - because *all verbs* in the Japanese language in the dictionary form end with う form hiragana.

For example, the verb いく (to go) ends in く. くる (to come), わかる (to understand), and かえる (to return) all end in る. Both く and る are う form hiragana.

### Verb types

Each verb in this lesson has been labeled as regular or irregular. The majority of Japanese verbs are regular verbs. We call them “regular” because there are so many of them and they all follow the exact same conjugation pattern.

Generally, irregular verbs do not follow any logical rule. The patterns of irregular verbs must be memorized. Luckily there are only a small amount of irregular verbs.

### Making the conversion

To make the polite versions of regular verbs, the *final* hiragana of the dictionary form needs to be changed into the い form.

Step 1: Convert the last hiragana into the い form.

わ か ⑤る → わ か ⑤り  
 か え ⑤る → か え ⑤り  
 い ⑤く → い ⑤き

Look back at the hiragana chart at the beginning of this lesson. See the る? Move straight up the column to the り. The first step of conjugating regular verbs into their polite forms is to switch their final hiragana into the い form.

Remember that this pattern will NOT work for irregular verbs such as くる (to come), but only for regular verbs.

In "Japanese From Zero!" Book 2 you will learn how to use the hiragana chart to make more verb conjugations.



After changing the dictionary form into the い form, all you need to do is add one of the following endings to complete the verb:

| Polite verb endings             |                              |                  |                     |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Present / Future<br>Positive    | Present / Future<br>Negative | Past<br>Positive | Past<br>Negative    |
| ~ます<br>will~, do~, am going to~ | ~ません<br>won't~, don't~       | ~ました<br>did~     | ~ません でした<br>didn't~ |

Step 2: Add a stem.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| わ | か | り | + | } | ま | す |       |
| か | え | り | + |   | ま | せ | ん     |
|   |   |   |   |   | ま | し | た     |
| い | き |   | + |   | ま | せ | ん でした |

Now let's conjugate each of the regular verbs in this lesson.

わかります  
 わかりません  
 わかりました  
 わかりませんでした

do understand  
 do not understand, will not understand  
 understood, did understand  
 didn't understand

いきます  
 いきません  
 いきました  
 いきませんでした

will go, do go  
 won't go, don't go  
 went  
 didn't go

かえります  
 かえりません  
 かえりました  
 かえりませんでした

will return, do return  
 will not return, do not return  
 returned  
 didn't return

The only verb in this lesson that isn't regular is くる (come). Remember: irregular verbs don't follow the chart we showed you earlier - their patterns have to be memorized.

くる is conjugated as follows:

|         |                        |
|---------|------------------------|
| きます     | will come, do come     |
| きません    | won't come, don't come |
| きました    | came                   |
| きませんでした | didn't come            |

## □ Location particles に and へ

Now that we have verbs to get you moving, where are you going? That's what location particles are for.

に and へ (although written as へ, it's pronounced as え) are both location and destination particles. They are placed after locations. In English, に and へ can both mean "to "

There are differences where に and へ are used. に is used when going to an exact location, as in, "I am going to France" (Furansu に いきます). The particle へ is used when going in a general direction, as in "I am going to the south" (みなみへ いきます).

In modern Japan most Japanese people freely mix に and へ without regard to grammatical rules. It would not be wrong to say Furansu へ いきます. The key point to remember is that locations require a location marker. In order to prevent confusion, from this point on we will use に as the standard location and destination marker.

### に as a location marker

#### Examples

|        |                    |
|--------|--------------------|
| とうきょうに | <u>to</u> Tokyo    |
| がっこうに  | <u>to</u> school   |
| ぎんこうに  | <u>to</u> the bank |
| にほんに   | <u>to</u> Japan    |

Now let's combine locations with the verbs.

#### Example Sentences

- |                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. とうきょうに いきます。    | I am going to Tokyo.     |
| 2. ぎんこうに いきました。    | I went to the bank.      |
| 3. がっこうに いきませんでした。 | I didn't go to school.   |
| 4. おおさかに いきません。    | I am not going to Osaka. |

### □ Time particle に

に is also used to mark time in a sentence. When used with time it can mean "in", "on", or "at".

#### に as a time marker

#### Examples

- |       |                       |
|-------|-----------------------|
| いちがつに | <u>in</u> January     |
| かようびに | <u>on</u> Tuesday     |
| ろくに   | <u>at</u> six o'clock |

Now let's combine times with the verbs.

#### Example Sentences

- |                 |                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. いちがつに いきます。  | I am going <u>in</u> January. |
| 2. かようびに いきました。 | I went <u>on</u> Tuesday.     |

### □ Time particle usage with きょう、せんしゅう、らいねん etc.

You do not need to add a time particle to words like きょう (today)、あした (tomorrow) etc. These words are not "specific times" like "Monday" or "January". Adding に after them would be as strange as saying "I am going ON tomorrow" or "I didn't go ON yesterday".

This rule is the same for words such as "this week", "next month", "last year", etc.

An easy way to remember this rule is: "If you don't use IN, ON, or AT in English, then don't use に in Japanese." Look at the following examples:

#### Example Sentences

- |                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. らいしゅう いきます。    | I am going next week.     |
| 2. きのう いきました。     | I went yesterday.         |
| 3. きょねん いきませんでした。 | I didn't go last year.    |
| 4. こんしゅう いきません。   | I am not going this week. |

## □ Sentence structure using verbs

Verbs always come last in Japanese sentences. And just like か is added to です to make a question, you can add か after the conjugated verb to make a question. In the following examples we will use time, location, and question words.

### Example Q&A

1. どこに いきますか。

Where are you going (to)?

にほんに いきます。

I am going to Japan.

2. いえに かえりましたか。

Did you return home?

いいえ、ともだちのいえに いました。

No, I went to a friend's house.

3. いつ きますか。

When are you coming?

さんがつに いきます。

I will go in March.

4. なんにちに いきますか。

What day of the month are you going?

ふつかに いきます。

I am going on the 2<sup>nd</sup>.

5. いつ にほんに いきますか。

When are you going to Japan?

らいねんの いちがつに いきます。

I am going next January.

6. きのを、がっこうに いましたか。

Did you go to school yesterday?

いいえ、いきませんでした。でも、あした いきます。

No, I didn't go. But I will go tomorrow.

## Using the verb わかる

When using わかる to say that you understand something, you must use が to mark the thing that you understand.

### Example Sentences

- |                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. にほんごが わかります。     | I understand Japanese.         |
| 2. にほんごが わかりません。    | I don't understand Japanese.   |
| 3. かれは えいごが わかりません。 | He doesn't understand English. |

## Languages and nationalities

By adding ご (language) and じん (people) after a country name, you can create languages and nationalities. For example, Spain in Japanese is "supein". To say "Spanish language," you say supein ご. Russia in Japanese is "roshia". To say someone is Russian, you say roshia じん.

| English | Country | People    | Language |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|
| Japan   | にほん     | にほんじん     | にほんご     |
| Korea   | かんこく    | かんこくじん    | かんこくご    |
| China   | ちゅうごく   | ちゅうごくじん   | ちゅうごくご   |
| Spain   | supein  | supein じん | supein ご |

Note: This works for many countries but not all.

| English     | Country   | People       | Language   |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|------------|
| America     | amerika   | amerika じん   | えいご        |
| Phillipines | firipin   | firipin じん   | tagaragu ご |
| Mexico      | mekishiko | mekishiko じん | supein ご   |

### Example Sentences

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Furansu ごが わかりますか。      | Do you understand French? |
| 2. Jonさんは kanada じん です。    | Jon is Canadian.          |
| 3. ようこさんは supein ごが はなせます。 | Youko can speak Spanish.  |

## 12 Q&A しつもん と こたえ E→J

### 1. When are you coming back?

I will return in May.

I will return on the 22<sup>nd</sup>.

I will return next week.

いつ かえりますか。

5がつに かえります。

22にちに かえります。

らいしゅう かえります。

**2. Are you going?**

Yes, I am going.

No, I am not going.

いきますか。

はい、いきます。

いいえ、いきません。

**3. Where are you going?**

I am going to Miyazaki City.

I am going to a friend's house.

I am going to the Hyougo Prefecture.

どこに いきますか。

みやざきしに いきます。

ともだちの いえに いきます。

ひょうごけん に いきます。

**4. Are you going to Tokyo?**

Yes, I am going to Tokyo.

No, I am not going to Tokyo.

とうきょうに いきますか。

はい、とうきょうに いきます。

いいえ、とうきょうに いきません。

**5. Are you coming to the party?**

Yes, I am going.

No, I am not going.

Pa-ti に きますか。

はい、いきます。

いいえ、いきません。

**6. Did you go to Japan?**

Yes, I went to Japan.

No, I didn't go to Japan

にほんに いきましたか。

はい、にほんに いきました。

いいえ、にほんに いきませんでした。

**7. When are you coming back?**

I will return tomorrow.

I will return on Sunday

いつ かえりますか。

あした かえります。

にちようびに かえります。

**8. Will you come (over) tomorrow?**

Yes, I will go.

No, I won't go.

No, I will go the day after tomorrow.

あした、きますか。

はい、いきます。

いいえ、いきません。

いいえ、あさって いきます。

**9. When did you return to Canada?**

I didn't return.

I came back on Wednesday.

いつ kanada に かえりましたか。

かえりませんでした。

すいようびに かえりました。

**10. What nationality are you?**

I am Mexican.

I am Korean.

I am Chinese.

I am American.

なにじん ですか。

Mekishiko じん です。

かんこくじん です。

ちゅうごくじん です。

Amerika じん です。

## 12 Q&A しつもと ことえ J→E

1. ふるたさんは ちゅうごくごが わかりますか？  
Does Mr. Furuta understand Chinese?

いいえ。でも、かんこくごが わかります。  
No. But he understands Korean.

2. なにごが はなせますか。  
What languages do you speak?

Supeinごと えいごが はなせます。  
I can speak Spanish and English.

ちゅうごくごと かんこくごと にほんごが はなせます。  
I can speak Chinese and Korean and Japanese.

## 12 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ J→E

### 1. Conversation between friends

A: どこに いきますか。  
B: おじいさんの いえに いきます。  
A: おじいさんの いえは どこですか。  
B: Rasu begasu です。

A: Where are you going?  
B: I am going to my grandfather's house.  
A: Where is your grandfather's house?  
B: Las Vegas

### 2. Conversation on the phone between friends

A: いつ amerika に かえりますか。  
B: すいようびに かえります。  
A: あなたの おかあさんも かえりますか。  
B: はい、おかあさんも かえります。

A: When will you come back to America?  
B: I'll return on Wednesday  
A: Will your mother also come back?  
B: Yes, my mother will also return.

**3. Conversation between friends who haven't met in a while**

A: おひさしぶりです。

B: いつ かえりましたか。

A: おととい かえりました。

A: It's been a long time.

B: When did you return?

A: I came back the day before yesterday.

**4. Conversation between friends**

A: だれが pa-ti-に きますか。

B: よしこさんと けいこさんが きます。

A: よしこさんと けいこさんは だれですか。

B: わたしの ともだちです。

A: Who is coming to the party?

B: Yoshiko and Keiko are coming.

A: Who are Yoshiko and Keiko?

B: They're my friends.

**5. Conversation between two co-workers**

A: いつ amerika に いきましたか。

B: Amerika に いきませんでした。

A: じゃ、どこに いきましたか。

B: かんこくに いきました。

A: When did you go to America?

B: I didn't go to America.

A: Well then, where did you go?

B: I went to Korea.

**6. Conversation at work**

A: なにごが はなせますか。

B: ちゅうごくごと えいごと にほんごが はなせます。

A: すごいですね。なにじんですか。

B: にほんじんです。

A: What languages can you speak?

B: I can speak Chinese, English, and Japanese

A: That's amazing. What nationality are you?

B: I'm Japanese.



**12 Reading Comprehension どっかい**

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① ここは amerika の shikago し です。
- ② まりさんは じゅうがつ みっかに にほんに いました。
- ③ きノウ shikago しに かえりました。
- ④ まりさんと ともだちの よしこさんは あした pa-ti-に いきます。
- ⑤ まりさんの ふくは しろです。
- ⑥ よしこさんの は orenji です。
- ⑦ あしたは harowi-n (Halloween) です。
- ⑧ まりさんは pa-ti-が だいすき です。
- ⑨ くがつによしこさんのおとうさんの たんじょうび pa-ti-に いました。
- ⑩ らいねんの しちがつとおかに かんこくに いきます。



## 12 Lesson Activities

### □ Grammar drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate verb forms.

| Dictionary Form | Polite Forms     |          |          |           |
|-----------------|------------------|----------|----------|-----------|
|                 | Present / Future |          | Past     |           |
|                 | positive         | negative | positive | negative  |
| いく              | いきます             |          |          |           |
| くる              |                  | きません     |          |           |
| かえる             |                  |          | かえりました   |           |
| わかる             |                  |          |          | わかりませんでした |

### □ Substitution drill

Replace the underlined word with the words provided.

Ex. あした kanada に いきます。

→ Japan      あした にほんに いきます。

1. きょう ぎんこう に いきません。

→ school \_\_\_\_\_

→ McDonald's \_\_\_\_\_

→ friend's house \_\_\_\_\_

2. たなかさんは、おととい とうきょうに かえりました。

→ yesterday \_\_\_\_\_

→ last Friday \_\_\_\_\_

→ 5<sup>th</sup> of last month \_\_\_\_\_

3. やまもとさんは、にほんに かえりませんでした。

→ America \_\_\_\_\_

→ Los Angeles \_\_\_\_\_

→ Chicago \_\_\_\_\_

4. やまださんは、さんがつに ここに きます。

→ 2<sup>nd</sup> of next month \_\_\_\_\_

→ next Saturday \_\_\_\_\_

→ May of next year \_\_\_\_\_

5. おかあさんの いえに いきます。

→ won't go \_\_\_\_\_

→ went \_\_\_\_\_

→ didn't go \_\_\_\_\_

6. たむらさんの おとうさんは、にほんごが わかります。

→ English \_\_\_\_\_

→ computer \_\_\_\_\_

→ hiragana and katakana \_\_\_\_\_

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. まりさんは きのう どこに かえりましたか。

---

2. まりさんの ともだちの なまえは 何ですか。

---

3. きょうは なんがつ なんにち ですか。

---

4. まりさんは くがつに どこに 行きましたか。

---

5. まりさんは らいねん どこに 行きますか。

---

6. ここは 何ですか。

---

7. まりさんは はちがつに どこに 行きましたか。

---

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Tanaka sees Ms. Smith (Sumisu) on the street and they start a conversation.

Sumisu さん: たなかさん、こんにちは。

たなかさん: Sumisu さん、こんにちは。きょうは あついですね。

Sumisu さん: はい、あついです。

たなかさん: どこに いきますか。

Sumisu さん: いまから ①がっこうに いきます。

たなかさん: ②なんの がっこう ですか。

Sumisu さん: ③にほんごがっこう です。

たなかさん: そうですか。わたしは いまから ④しごとに いきます。

### New words and expressions in the dialogue

#### Progressive

#### Kanji+

#### English

いまから

今から

from now / from now on

なんの？

何の？

What? Which? What kind of?

きょうは あついですね。

今日は暑いんですね。

Today sure is hot.

## □ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the above dialogue in pairs.

Substitute ①-④ with the following words and try the conversation again.

- A) ① Movies (えいが)  
 ② What movie is it?  
 ③ Any movie  
 ④ I'm going to the bank



- B) ① Party  
 ② What (kind of) party is it?  
 ③ school party  
 ④ I'm going home
- C) ① McDonald's  
 ② Where is it?  
 ③ It's over there  
 ④ I'm going to school

### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

|  |
|--|
| 1.   |
| <b>Ryouhei:</b> I am going to China.                   |
| <b>Nobuko:</b> I went last year. When are you going?   |
| <b>Ryouhei:</b> On the 20 <sup>th</sup> of next month. |
| <b>Nobuko:</b> When will you return?                   |
| <b>Ryouhei:</b> Maybe on the 30 <sup>th</sup>          |
| <b>Nobuko:</b> That's nice.                            |
| Ryouhei:   |
| Nobuko:  |
| Ryouhei:   |
| Nobuko:  |
| Ryouhei:   |
| Nobuko:  |

**12 Drill ドリル**

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. どこに いきますか。
2. いつ かえりますか。
3. きんようびに いました。
4. にほんごが わかりますか。
5. なんがつに いきますか。

**12 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり**

In this lesson we are starting a new sentence to build on. Watch it grow and transform as new concepts are introduced.

あした にほんに いきます。  
Tomorrow, I am going to Japan.

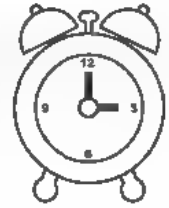
Lesson

# 13

Level ①

## Telling Time

Hours and minutes



### 13 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

#### Before The Lesson

1. Review all of the vocabulary groups.
2. Know how to conjugate verbs into the polite forms.

#### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to tell time in Japanese.
2. Learn how to use から (from) and まで (until).

#### From The Teachers

1. から (from) and まで (until) are used for both time and location and are very handy particles. Make sure you take the time to learn how they are used.
2. Review everything you have learned in this book. It sets the stage for Level 2.  
Good Luck!

### 13 New Words あたらしい ことば

#### Progressive

なんじ

はん

ごぜん

ごご

くうこう

じゅぎょう

arubaito

やすみ

#### Kana

なんじ

はん

ごぜん

ごご

くうこう

じゅぎょう

アルバイト

やすみ

#### Kanji

何時

半

午前

午後

空港

授業

アルバイト

休み

#### English

what time?

half past (:30)

AM (also means morning)

PM (also means afternoon)

airport

class

part-time job






day off, break



# 13 Time じかん

| o'clock - じ   |     |    |                |        |     |
|---------------|-----|----|----------------|--------|-----|
| one o'clock   | いちじ | 一時 | seven o'clock  | しちじ    | 七時  |
| two o'clock   | にじ  | 二時 | eight o'clock  | はちじ    | 八時  |
| three o'clock | さんじ | 三時 | nine o'clock   | くじ     | 九時  |
| four o'clock  | よじ  | 四時 | ten o'clock    | じゅうじ   | 十時  |
| five o'clock  | ごじ  | 五時 | eleven o'clock | じゅういちじ | 十一時 |
| six o'clock   | ろくじ | 六時 | twelve o'clock | じゅうにじ  | 十二時 |

|   |   |   |  |   |
|---|---|---|--|---|
|  |  |  |  |  |
| さんじ   | しちじ   | よじ  | じゅういちじ   | くじ  |

| minutes - ぶん, ぷん |              |     |
|------------------|--------------|-----|
| 1 minute         | いっぷん         | 一分  |
| 2 minutes        | にぶん          | 二分  |
| 3 minutes        | さんぷん         | 三分  |
| 4 minutes        | よんぷん         | 四分  |
| 5 minutes        | ごぶん          | 五分  |
| 6 minutes        | ろっぷん         | 六分  |
| 7 minutes        | ななぶん         | 七分  |
| 8 minutes        | はっぶん / はちぶん  | 八分  |
| 9 minutes        | きゅうぶん        | 九分  |
| 10 minutes       | じゅうぷん / じっぶん | 十分  |
| 11 minutes       | じゅういっぶん      | 十一分 |
| 12 minutes       | じゅうにぶん       | 十二分 |
| 13 minutes       | じゅうさんぷん      | 十三分 |
| 14 minutes       | じゅうよんぷん      | 十四分 |
| 15 minutes       | じゅうごぶん       | 十五分 |
| 16 minutes       | じゅうろっぷん      | 十六分 |

|            |                   |      |
|------------|-------------------|------|
| 17 minutes | じゅうななふん           | 十七分  |
| 18 minutes | じゅうはっぶん / じゅうはちふん | 十八分  |
| 19 minutes | じゅうきゅうふん          | 十九分  |
| 20 minutes | にじゅっぶん / にじっぶん    | 二十分  |
| 25 minutes | にじゅうごふん           | 二十五分 |
| 30 minutes | さんじゅっぶん / さんじっぶん  | 三十分  |
| 35 minutes | さんじゅうごふん          | 三十五分 |
| 40 minutes | よんじゅっぶん / よんじっぶん  | 四十分  |
| 45 minutes | よんじゅうごふん          | 四十五分 |
| 50 minutes | ごじゅっぶん / ごじっぶん    | 五十分  |
| 55 minutes | ごじゅうごふん           | 五十五分 |
| 60 minutes | ろくじゅっぶん / ろくじっぶん  | 六十分  |



しちじ  
よんぶん



じゅうじ  
はっぶん



くじ  
じゅういっぶん



よじ  
よんじゅっぶん



しちじ  
にじゅうごふん

## 13 Grammar ぶんぼう

### □ AM and PM

ごぜん means both morning and AM ごご means both afternoon and PM. They are always placed in front of the time.

#### Examples

- |                           |          |
|---------------------------|----------|
| 1. <u>ごぜん</u> ごじ          | 5:00 AM  |
| 2. <u>ごぜん</u> じゅうにじ じゅっぶん | 12:10 AM |
| 3. <u>ごご</u> ろくじ          | 6:00 PM  |
| 4. <u>ごご</u> しちじ いっぶん     | 7:01 PM  |
| 5. <u>ごご</u> いちじ よんじゅうごふん | 1:45 PM  |

## □ Half past

はん means half past. It always comes after the hour.

### Examples

- |                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|
| 1. じゅうじ <u>はん</u> | 10:30 |
| 2. さんじ <u>はん</u>  | 3:30  |
| 3. にじ <u>はん</u>   | 2:30  |

### Example sentences

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. にじはんに いきます。         | I am going at 2:30.      |
| 2. しちはんに かえります。        | I will return at 7:30.   |
| 3. ともだちは じゅうじはんに きました。 | My friend came at 10:30. |

## □ Using the particle から

から means “from” or “since,” depending on the context. It comes after a time or location to say “from this time” or “from this location”. It is used much like its English equivalent.

### から with time

#### Examples

- |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. なんじ <u>から</u>   | <u>from</u> what time? |
| 2. はちがつ <u>から</u>  | <u>from</u> August     |
| 3. いつ <u>から</u>    | <u>from</u> when?      |
| 4. さんじはん <u>から</u> | <u>from</u> 3:30       |
| 5. げつようび <u>から</u> | <u>from</u> Monday     |

### から with location

#### Examples

- |                      |                                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. どこ <u>から</u>      | <u>from</u> where                 |
| 2. あそこ <u>から</u>     | <u>from</u> that place over there |
| 3. にほん <u>から</u>     | <u>from</u> Japan                 |
| 4. しごと <u>から</u>     | <u>from</u> work                  |
| 5. ともだちのいえ <u>から</u> | <u>from</u> a friend's house      |

**Example Q&A**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. なんじから いきますか。<br>ごじから いきます。                     | <b>From what time will you go?</b><br>I will go <u>from</u> five o'clock.                                     |
| 2. しごとは なんじから ですか。<br>しちじはんから です。                 | <b>From what time is your work?</b><br>It's <u>from</u> 7:30.   |
| 3. どこから きましたか。<br>あおもりけんから きました。<br>みやざきしから きました。 | <b>Where did you come from?</b><br>I came <u>from</u> Aomori Prefecture.<br>I came <u>from</u> Miyazaki City. |
| 4. いつ にほんから かえりますか。<br>あした かえります。                 | <b>When will you return from Japan?</b><br>I will return tomorrow.  |
| 5. なつは きょうからですか。<br><br>いいえ、あさってからです。             | <b>Is summer from today?</b><br>(Does summer start today?)<br>No, it is <u>from</u> the day after tomorrow.   |

**□ Using the particle まで**

まで means "until", "up until", or "as far as". It comes after a time or location to say "until this time" or "until this location". When まで is used with location, the location is the final destination. It can also mean "up until to" or just "to". Remember that まで and に are different. In most cases, に can be thought of as a single destination marker and まで can be thought of as a final destination marker.

**まで with time****Examples**

- |                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. なんじ <u>まで</u>  | <u>until</u> what time?    |
| 2. いつ <u>まで</u>   | <u>until</u> when?         |
| 3. さんじ <u>まで</u>  | <u>until</u> three o'clock |
| 4. いちがつ <u>まで</u> | <u>until</u> January       |
| 5. きょう <u>まで</u>  | <u>until</u> today         |

**まで with location****Examples**

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. とうきょう <u>まで</u> | <u>until</u> Tokyo |
| 2. どこ <u>まで</u>    | <u>until</u> where |
| 3. しごと <u>まで</u>   | <u>until</u> work  |

**Example Q&A**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. どこまで いきますか。<br>ほっかいどう <u>まで</u> いきます。           | <u>Up until</u> where (how far) are you going?<br>I am going <u>to</u> (as far as) Hokkaido.  |
| 2. しごとは なんじ <u>まで</u> ですか。<br>しちじはん <u>まで</u> です。  | <u>Until</u> what time is your work?<br>It's <u>until</u> 7:30.                               |
| 3. どこ <u>まで</u> 行きましたか。<br>あおもりけん <u>まで</u> 行きました。 | <u>Up until</u> where (how far) did you go?<br>I went <u>to</u> (as far as) Aomori Prefecture |
| 4. がっこうは なんじ <u>まで</u> ですか。<br>さんじはん <u>まで</u> です。 | <u>Until</u> what time is school?<br>It's <u>until</u> 3:30.                                  |

**13 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ J→E****1. Conversation between co-workers**

- A: しごとは なんじから なんじまで ですか。  
 B: ごぜん はちじから ごご ごじまで です。  
 A: いつ かえりますか。  
 B: ごじはんにかえります。
- A: From what time until what time is your work?  
 B: It's from 8 AM until 5 PM.  
 A: When will you return home?  
 B: I will return at 5:30.

**2. Conversation between friends**

- A: ふゆは いつから いつまで ですか。  
 B: ふゆは じゅうがつから にがつまで です。  
 A: ちがいます。  
 B: ごめんなさい。ふゆは じゅうにがつから さんがつまで です。
- A: From when until when is winter?  
 B: Winter is from November until February.  
 A: That's wrong.  
 B: Sorry. Winter is from December until March

**3. Conversation between friends**

A: きょう、どこから どこまで いきますか。

B: なごやしから ひめじしまで いきます。

A: でんしゃは なんじですか。

B: じゅういちじ よんじゅうさんぷん です。

A: From where to where are you going today?

B: I will go from Nagoya City to Himeji City.

A: What time is the train?

B: It's at 11:43.

**4. Conversation between brothers**

A: おかあさんは いつ きますか。

B: らいしゅうの どうようびに きます。

A: なんじに?

B: ごぜん しちじに。

A: When will mother come?

B: She will come next Saturday.

A: At what time?

B: At 7 AM.

**5. Conversation between friends**

A: Pa-ti-は なんじからなんじまで ですか。

B: ごご ろくじから ごぜん いちじまで です。

A: わかりました。 ありがとう。

A: From what time until what time is the party?

B: It's from 6 PM until 1 AM.

A: Okay. Thanks.

**6. Conversation between friends**

A: なんじの ひこうき ですか。

B: ひこうきは ごごはちじ じゅうななぷん です。

A: こうこうに なんじに いきますか。

B: ろくじはんに いきます。

A: What time is your flight? ( ひこうき can mean "flight" and "plane" )

B: The plane (my flight) is 8:17 PM.

A: What time are you going to the airport?

B: I'm going at 6:30.

**7. Conversation between neighbors**

A: Kurisumasu の pa-ti-は いつですか。

B: らいしゅうの どうぶの しちじからです。

A: なんじまでですか。

B: たぶん じゅうにじまで です。

A: When is the Christmas party?

B: It starts at seven o'clock next Saturday.

A: What time does it end?

B: Maybe until twelve o'clock.

**13 Q&A しつもん と こたえ E→J****1. What time is it?**

It is two o'clock.

It is 6:12.

なんじ ですか。

にじ です。

ろくじ じゅうにふん です。

**2. What time was it?**

It was twelve o'clock.

It was three o'clock.

It was four o'clock.

なんじ でしたか。

じゅうにじ でした。

さんじ でした。

よじ でした。

**3. From what time is your work?**

My work is from eight o'clock.

My work is from seven o'clock

あなたの しごとは なんじから ですか。

わたしの しごとは はちじから です。

わたしの しごとは しちじから です。

**4. What time are you going?**

I'm going at three o'clock.

I'm not going.

なんじに いきますか。

さんじに いきます。

いきません。

**5. What time will you go back?**

I will go back at 6:30.

I'm not going back.

なんじに かえりますか。

ろくじはん に かえります。

かえりません。

**6. What time did you come here?**

I came at 4:15.

I came yesterday

ここに なんじに きましたか。

よじ じゅうごふん に きました。

きのう きました。

**7. Until when is your break?**

やすみは いつまで ですか。

My break until August.  
It's until next week.

やすみは はちがつまで です。  
らいしゅうまで です。

8. **Since when have you liked Japanese?**  
I have liked it since I was fifteen years old.  
I have liked it since last year.

いつから にほんごが すき でしたか。  
じゅうごさいから すきでした。  
きょねんから すきでした。

## 13 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① ここは にほんごの がっこうです。
- ② ここに Samu (Sam) さんは ごぜん じゅうじに きました。
- ③ Jon さんは じゅうじ じゅうごふんに きました。
- ④ きょうの じゅぎょうは じゅうじはんから ごご いちじまで です。
- ⑤ Samu さんは にじに いえに かえります。
- ⑥ ごご よじに しごとに いきます。
- ⑦ Samu さんの しごとは よじはんから ごぜん いちじはんまで です。
- ⑧ Samu さんの しごとは hoteru の しごとです。
- ⑨ Jon さんは にじはんから supein ごの がっこうに いきます。
- ⑩ Supein ごの がっこうは さんじまで です。
- ⑪ いえに ろくじに かえります。
- ⑫ ごご はちじから arubaito です。
- ⑬ しちじ ごじゅうごふんに いきます。
- ⑭ Arubaito は じゅうにじまで です。
- ⑮ Jon さんの arubaito は makudonarudo です。



# 13 Lesson Activities

## □ Drill

Write the time shown on each clock in Japanese.



1. \_\_\_\_\_



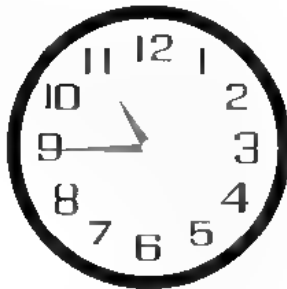
2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



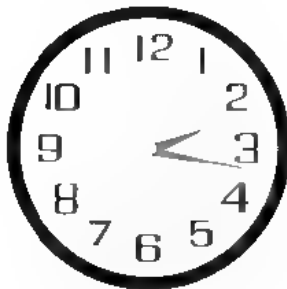
5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_



7. \_\_\_\_\_



8. \_\_\_\_\_



9. \_\_\_\_\_

## □ Question and answer

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Write all the answers in hiragana.

1. しごと / がっこうは なんじからですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. なんじに しごと / がっこうに いきますか。

---

3. なんようびに しごと / がっこうに いきますか。

---

4. なんじに いえに かえりますか。

---

5. いま、なんじですか。

---

6. にほんごのじゅぎょうは なんじから なんじまでですか。

---

7. あなたの にほんごのせんせいは だれですか。

---

8. ふゆは なんがつから なんがつまでですか。(December to February)

---

9. なつは なんがつから なんがつまでですか。(June to September)

---

### ☐ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson. Write all the answers in hiragana (except for the katakana words).

1. ここは どこですか。

---

2. だれが にほんごの がっこうに じゅうじに きましたか。

---

3. きょうの じゅうぎょうは いつですか。

---

4. Samu さんの しごとは なんじから なんじまでですか。

---

5. Samu さんは いえに なんじに かえりましたか。

---

6. Jon さんの arubaito は なんじから なんじまで ですか。

---

7. Jon さんは なんじに にほんごの がっこうに きましたか。

---

8. Jon さんは にじはんに どこに いきますか。

---

## □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English.

1.

Aさん: いつから しごとですか。

Bさん: にがつ ようかから です。

Aさん: しごとは なんじから なんじまで ですか。

Bさん: ごぜん はちじから ごこ よじまで です。

2.

Aさん: いま なんじ ですか。

Bさん: よじ にじゅうぶん です。

Aさん: よじはん に いえに かえます。

Bさん: いえは どこ ですか。

Aさん: あそこ です。

3.

Aさん: あしたから にほんに かえます。

Bさん: いつまで ですか。

Aさん: はちがつ じゅうごにちまで です。

Bさん: そうですか。 いいですね。

**□ English translation**

Translate the following conversations into Japanese.

|                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| 1.                               |
| Mr. A: When did you come here?   |
| Ms. B: I came at nine.           |
| Mr. A: Where is your friend?     |
| Ms. B: My friend didn't come.    |
| Mr. A: Where is your friend now? |
| Ms. B: He is at home now.        |
|                                  |
|                                  |
|                                  |
|                                  |
|                                  |
|                                  |

|   |
|---|
| 2.  |
| Mrs. A: What time is your airplane?             |
| Mr. B: It's 10:30 a.m.                          |
| Mrs. A: What time are you going to the airport? |
| Mr. B: I'll go at 9:00.                         |
| Mrs. A: Got it.                                 |
|   |
|   |
|   |
|   |
|   |

3.

Mr. A: From what time is your part time job?

Mr. B: It's from 1:00 p.m.

Mr. A: Do you like your part time job?

Mr. B: No, I don't like it.

### □ Particle drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate particles.

1. わたし \_\_\_\_\_ しごと \_\_\_\_\_ はちじ \_\_\_\_\_ ごじ \_\_\_\_\_ です。
2. せんげつ \_\_\_\_\_ じゅうごにち \_\_\_\_\_ もくようびでした。
3. なんじ \_\_\_\_\_ いえ \_\_\_\_\_ かえります \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. やまださん \_\_\_\_\_ くるま \_\_\_\_\_ しろ \_\_\_\_\_ gure- です。
5. いぬ \_\_\_\_\_ すきです。でも、ねこ \_\_\_\_\_ きらいです。
6. あたらしいじてんしゃ \_\_\_\_\_ ほしいです。
7. どれ \_\_\_\_\_ たなかさん \_\_\_\_\_ ほん です \_\_\_\_\_ ?
8. かようび \_\_\_\_\_ とうきょう \_\_\_\_\_ いきます。
9. Hanba-ga- \_\_\_\_\_ poteto \_\_\_\_\_ おねがいします。  
Ko-ra \_\_\_\_\_ (also) おねがいします。

### □ Short dialogue

Mr. Hashimoto is talking to Mr. Watanabe about his plans for the weekend.

わたなべさん: はしもとさん、あしたも はちじから しごとはですか。

はしもとさん: いいえ、あしたは やすみです。

わたなべさん: いいですね。あしたは どこに いきますか。

はしもとさん: あしたは おおさかに いきます。

わたなべさん: ひこうきですか。

はしもとさん: はい。くじの ひこうきです。くうこうに  
はちじに いきます。

わたなべさん: そうですか。いつ かえりますか。

はしもとさん: らいしゅうの かようびに とうきょうに かえります。



### □ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your weekend plans.
  - Use the new verbs: ~に いきます / きます / かえります

## 13 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なんじに いきますか。
2. でんしゃは なんじですか。
3. がっこうは いちじから はちじまで です。
4. あなたの しごとは なんじから ですか。
5. ごぜん ろくじに こうこうに いきます。

## 13 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あした、ごご さんじに にほんに いきます。  
Tomorrow I am going to Japan at 3 p.m.

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lesson:

Lesson 12: あした、ごご さんじに にほんに いきます。  
Tomorrow I am going to Japan.



# APPENDICES

**Everyday Phrases**

**Last Names**

**Girls' Given Names**

**Boys' Given Names**

**Answer Key**

**English Glossary**

**Ro-maji Glossary**

**Kana Glossary**

**Japan Map**

## Everyday Phrases

### A Greetings あいさつ

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Good morning.                               | Ohayou gozaimasu. / Ohayou.      |
| 2. Good afternoon.                             | Konnichiwa.                      |
| 3. Good evening.                               | Konbanwa.                        |
| 4. Good night                                  | Oyasuminasai. / Oyasumi.         |
| 5. Goodbye.                                    | Sayounara.                       |
| 6. Thank you.                                  | Doumo arigatou. / Arigatou.      |
| 7. Thank you very much.                        | Doumo arigatou gozaimasu.        |
| 8. You are welcome.                            | Dou itashimashite.               |
| 9. It's been a long time. / Long time no see.  | Shibaraku deshita.               |
| 10. It's been a long time. / Long time no see. | Ohisashiburi desu. (standard)    |
| 11. It's been a long time. / Long time no see. | Gobusata shite orimasu. (formal) |
| 12. Happy Birthday.                            | Tanjoubi omedetou.               |
| 13. Happy New Year.                            | Akemashite omedetou.             |
| 14. Bye.                                       | Bai bai.                         |
| 15. See you.                                   | Jaa ne. / Jaa.                   |
| 16. See you again.                             | Jaa mata. / De wa mata.          |
| 17. Farewell.                                  | Sayounara.                       |

### B Self Introductions じこしょうかい

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 18. Nice to meet you.    | Hajimemashite                                    |
| 19. What is your name?   | Onamae wa nan desu ka.                           |
| 20. I am <u>Tanaka</u> . | (polite and humble) <u>Tanaka</u> to moushimasu. |
| 21. I am <u>Tanaka</u> . | (simple but correct) <u>Tanaka</u> desu.         |
| 22. Best regards.        | Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.                        |
- There is not an exact translation, but this phrase is said when first meeting somebody, usually after stating your name. It is also used on many other occasions to mean, "I request of you," when one is requesting something of another.

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 23. Where did you come from?  | Doko kara kimashita ka.    |
| 24. I came from ____.         | _____ kara kimashita.      |
| 25. Where do you live?        | Doko ni sundeimasu ka.     |
| 26. I live in ____.           | _____ ni sundeimasu.       |
| 27. How old are you?          | Nan-sai desu ka.           |
| 28. I am <u>25</u> years old. | <u>Ni juu go</u> sai desu. |
| 29. How old do I look?        | Nan-sai ni miemasu ka.     |
| 30. You look ____.            | _____ ni miemasu.          |

## **C** Communication コミュニケーション

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 31. I am studying Japanese.                       | Nihongo o benkyou shiteimasu. |
| 32. Do you understand?                            | Wakarimasu ka.                |
| 33. Yes, I understand.                            | Hai, wakarimasu.              |
| 34. No, I don't understand.                       | iie, wakarimasen.             |
| 35. Can you speak Japanese?                       | Nihongo ga hanasemasu ka.     |
| 36. Can you speak English?                        | Eigo ga hanasemasu ka.        |
| 37. A little.                                     | Sukoshi.                      |
| 38. Not at all.                                   | Zenzen.                       |
| 39. Please say it once again                      | Mou ichido itte kudasai.      |
| 40. Please speak more slowly.                     | Motto yukkuri itte kudasai.   |
| 41. Please speak more clearly. (this can be rude) | Motto hakkiri itte kudasai.   |
| 42. Wait a moment, please.                        | Chotto matte kudasai.         |
| 43. Go ahead. / Please.                           | Douzo.                        |
| 44. Excuse me.                                    | Sumimasen.                    |
| 45. I am sorry. / Please forgive me.              | Gomen nasai.                  |
| 46. What is it in Japanese?                       | Nihongo de nan desu ka.       |
| 47. What is it in English?                        | Eigo de nan desu ka.          |

## **D** Shopping ショッピング

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 48. How much is it? | Ikura desu ka.     |
| 49. It's 400 yen.   | Yon hyaku en desu. |

- |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 50. It's 22 dollars.    | Ni juu ni doru desu. |
| 51. It's _____ dollars. | _____ doru desu.     |
| 52. It's _____ yen.     | _____ en desu.       |
| 53. It's expensive.     | Takai desu.          |
| 54. It's cheap.         | Yasui desu.          |

## **E** At a Restaurant / Eating レストランで

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 55. A menu, please.        | Menyu- o kudasai.                        |
| 56. Water, please.         | Mizu o kudasai.                          |
| 57. More, please.          | Motto kudasai.                           |
| 58. _____ please.          | _____ o kudasai.                         |
| 59. It's delicious.        | Oishii desu.                             |
| 60. It doesn't taste good. | Oishikunai desu.                         |
| 61. I am hungry.           | Onaka ga sukimashita.                    |
| 62. I am thirsty.          | Nodo ga kawakimashita.                   |
| 63. I am full.             | Onaka ga ippai desu.                     |
| 64. I will receive.        | Itadakimasu. (said just prior to eating) |
| 65. It was a good meal.    | Gochisou sama deshita                    |
- Said after a meal, normally when someone has cooked or paid for you.

## **F** Entering and Exiting はいるとき、でるとき

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| 66. I'm going and I will come back.   | Ittekimasu.    |
| Always said by person who will be returning.                                |                |
| 67. Go and be careful.  | Itterasshai.   |
| Always said to the person who will be back from the place they are leaving. |                |
| 68. I'm home.   | Tadaima.       |
| 69. Welcome home.   | Okaerinasai.   |
| 70. Sorry to disturb you.   | Ojama shimasu. |
- Said upon entering someone's house

71. Sorry to have disturbed you.  
Said upon leaving someone's house.

Ojama shimashita.

## **G** On the Phone でんわで

72. Hello.  
73. Is Mr. Honda there?  
74. Is \_\_\_\_\_ there?

Moshi moshi. (on the phone)  
Honda san wa irasshaimasu ka.  
\_\_\_\_\_ san wa irasshaimasu ka.

## **H** Commands / Requests

75. Please show me.  
76. Please guide me.  
77. Please eat it.  
78. Please read it.  
79. Please say it.  
80. Please write it.  
81. Please look at it. / Please look.  
82. Please come.  
83. Please stop it.

Misete kudasai.  
Annai shite kudasai.  
Tabete kudasai.  
Yonde kudasai.  
Ite kudasai.  
Kaite kudasai.  
Mite kudasai.  
Kite kudasai.  
Yamete kudasai.

## Last Names

### ❑ Common Japanese surnames and their meaning

Some of these family names' meanings are easily understood, but others are mysteriously vague. You will notice that most of the names have meaning related to the natural world. The meanings of the names are determined by the kanji they are composed of.

| Nāmē      | Hirāgana | Kanji | Possible Meaning    |
|-----------|----------|-------|---------------------|
| Aoki      | あおき      | 青木    | blue (green) tree   |
| Endou     | えんどう     | 遠藤    | far away wisteria   |
| Fujita    | ふじた      | 藤田    | a field of wisteria |
| Hasegawa  | はせがわ     | 長谷川   | long valley river   |
| Hashimoto | はしもと     | 橋本    | main bridge         |
| Hayashi   | はやし      | 林     | woods               |
| Higashi   | ひがし      | 東     | east                |
| Honda     | ほんだ      | 本田    | main rice paddy     |
| Ikeda     | いけだ      | 池田    | pond rice paddy     |
| Inoue     | いのうえ     | 井上    | above a well        |
| Ishikawa  | いしかわ     | 石川    | stone river         |
| Itou      | いとう      | 伊藤    | grand wisteria      |
| Kawada    | かわだ      | 川田    | river rice paddy    |
| Kawamoto  | かわもと     | 川本    | main river          |
| Kimura    | きむら      | 木村    | tree village        |
| Kobayashi | こばやし     | 小林    | small woods         |
| Matsumoto | まつもと     | 松本    | main pine           |
| Mikami    | みかみ      | 三上    | three above         |
| Minami    | みなみ      | 南     | south               |
| Mori      | もり       | 森     | forest              |
| Nakajima  | なかじま     | 中島    | inner island        |
| Nakamura  | なかむら     | 中村    | inner forest        |
| Nakano    | なかの      | 中野    | inner field         |
| Nishida   | にしだ      | 西田    | west rice paddy     |
| Nishimura | にしむら     | 西村    | west village        |
| Ogawa     | おがわ      | 小川    | small river         |
| Sasaki    | ささき      | 佐々木   | helping tree        |
| Satou     | さとう      | 佐藤    | helping wisteria    |
| Shimizu   | しみず      | 清水    | clear water         |
| Suzuki    | すずき      | 鈴木    | bell tree           |
| Takahashi | たかはし     | 高橋    | tall bridge         |
| Takenaka  | たけなか     | 竹中    | inside bamboo       |

|           |      |    |                       |
|-----------|------|----|-----------------------|
| Tamura    | たむら  | 田村 | rice paddy village    |
| Tanaka    | たなか  | 田中 | inner rice paddy      |
| Tashiro   | たしろ  | 田代 | substitute field      |
| Uchida    | うちだ  | 内田 | inner field           |
| Watanabe  | わたなべ | 渡辺 | neighborhood crossing |
| Yamada    | やまだ  | 山田 | mountain rice paddy   |
| Yamaguchi | やまぐち | 山口 | mountain exit         |
| Yamamoto  | やまもと | 山本 | main mountain         |
| Yamashita | やました | 山下 | below mountain        |
| Yamazaki  | やまざき | 山崎 | mountain peninsula    |
| Yoshida   | よしだ  | 吉田 | good rice paddy       |

## Girls' Given Names

### ❑ Common Japanese given names for girls

These are some common Japanese given names for girls. The meaning of each name depends on the kanji used. The possible kanji for each name is countless.

| Name    | Hiragana | Possible Kanji |
|---------|----------|----------------|
| Ai      | あい       | 愛              |
| Akemi   | あけみ      | 明美             |
| Akiko   | あきこ      | 明子、秋子          |
| Asami   | あさみ      | 麻美             |
| Asuka   | あすか      | 飛鳥、明日香         |
| Aya     | あや       | 綾、彩、亜矢         |
| Ayaka   | あやか      | 綾香、亜矢香         |
| Ayako   | あやこ      | 綾子、亜矢子         |
| Chikako | ちかこ      | 千賀子、千香子        |
| Chiyoko | ちよこ      | 千代子、知世子        |
| Erika   | えりか      | 絵里か            |
| Etsuko  | えつこ      | 悦子、恵津子         |
| Haruka  | はるか      | 春香             |
| Hideko  | ひでこ      | 秀子、英子          |
| Hiroko  | ひろこ      | 弘子、広子          |
| Hisako  | ひさこ      | 久子、寿子、比沙子      |
| Hitomi  | ひとみ      | 瞳              |
| Kaori   | かおり      | 香、香里           |
| Kazuko  | かずこ      | 和子、員子          |
| Keiko   | けいこ      | 恵子、啓子          |
| Kimiko  | きみこ      | 君子、公子          |
| Kiyoko  | きよこ      | 清子、喜代子         |
| Kumiko  | くみこ      | 久美子、組子         |
| Kyouko  | きょうこ     | 京子、今日子         |
| Maiko   | まいこ      | 麻衣子、舞子         |
| Manami  | まなみ      | 真奈美、愛美         |
| Marina  | まりな      | 真里菜            |
| Megumi  | めぐみ      | 恵美             |
| Michiko | みちこ      | 美智子、美知子        |
| Mika    | みか       | 美香             |
| Miyoko  | みよこ      | 美代子、三代子        |
| Momoko  | ももこ      | 桃子             |



|         |     |         |
|---------|-----|---------|
| Natsumi | なつみ | 奈津美、夏美  |
| Nobuko  | のぶこ | 信子、伸子   |
| Nobuyo  | のぶよ | 信代      |
| Nozomi  | のぞみ | 希       |
| Reiko   | れいこ | 玲子、礼子   |
| Rie     | りえ  | 理恵、利恵   |
| Rieko   | りえこ | 理恵子     |
| Rina    | りな  | 里奈      |
| Risa    | りさ  | 理沙      |
| Sachiko | さちこ | 幸子      |
| Saori   | さおり | 沙織、佐緒里  |
| Satoko  | さとこ | 聡子、智子   |
| Satomi  | さとみ | 里美      |
| Sayoko  | さよこ | 佐代子、沙代子 |
| Sayuri  | さゆり | 小百合     |
| Setsuko | せつこ | 節子      |
| Shizuka | しずか | 静香      |
| Shizuko | しずこ | 静子      |
| Tomoko  | ともこ | 智子、友子   |
| Youko   | ようこ | 洋子、陽子   |
| Yui     | ゆい  | 唯、由比    |
| Yuka    | ゆか  | 由香、由佳   |
| Yukari  | ゆかり | 由香里     |
| Yuki    | ゆき  | 由紀      |
| Yumiko  | ゆみこ | 由美子     |
| Yuuko   | ゆうこ | 裕子、優子   |

## Boys' Given Names

### □ Common Japanese given names for boys

These are some common Japanese given names for boys. The meaning of each name depends on the kanji used. The possible kanji for each name is countless.

| Name      | Hiragana | Possible Kanji |
|-----------|----------|----------------|
| Akira     | あきら      | 明、             |
| Daisuke   | だいすけ     | 大輔、大介          |
| Hidehiro  | ひでひろ     | 英博、英裕          |
| Hideki    | ひでき      | 秀樹、英樹          |
| Hideo     | ひでお      | 秀雄             |
| Hideto    | ひでと      | 秀人、英人          |
| Hideyuki  | ひでゆき     | 秀行、英之          |
| Isao      | いさお      | 功、勲            |
| Jouji     | じょうじ     | 譲二、譲治          |
| Ken       | けん       | 健、賢            |
| Kenichi   | けんいち     | 健一、謙一          |
| Kenji     | けんじ      | 健二、憲次          |
| Makoto    | まこと      | 誠              |
| Masaki    | まさき      | 正樹、真崎          |
| Masaru    | まさる      | 勝              |
| Masato    | まさと      | 正人             |
| Minoru    | みのる      | 実、稔            |
| Mitsuo    | みつお      | 光男、光夫          |
| Noboru    | のぼる      | 昇、登            |
| Osamu     | おさむ      | 修              |
| Ryo       | りょ       | 力、緑            |
| Ryouta    | りょうた     | 良太、亮太          |
| Satoshi   | さとし      | 聡、覚            |
| Shingo    | しんご      | 信吾             |
| Shougo    | しょうご     | 省吾             |
| Tadashi   | ただし      | 忠志、正           |
| Tatsuya   | たつや      | 達也、達矢          |
| Tomohide  | ともひで     | 智英、友秀          |
| Tsubasa   | つばさ      | 翼              |
| Tsutomu   | つとむ      | 勉、務            |
| Yoshiharu | よしはる     | 義春             |
| Yoshihiro | よしひろ     | 義弘             |

## Answer Key

### ❑ Pre-Lesson B: Number conversion

- |                           |                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. san juu yon            | 2. go juu kyuu                     |
| 3. ni juu kyuu            | 4. nana juu hachi                  |
| 5. hyaku ni juu           | 6. san byaku kyuu juu ni           |
| 7. go juu nana            | 8. san zen yon                     |
| 9. sen ni hyaku san       | 10. nana hyaku hachi juu kyuu      |
| 11. kyuu juu kyuu         | 12. yon sen roppyaku nana juu go   |
| 13. kyuu hyaku san juu ni | 14. hassen nana hyaku nana juu san |

### ❑ Pre-Lesson B: Everyday numbers

- (answer will vary)
- (answer will vary)
- (answer will vary)

### ❑ Pre-Lesson C: Japanese numbers

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. 75 years old  | 6. 16 years old  |
| 2. 48 years old  | 7. 51 years old  |
| 3. 82 years old  | 8. 20 years old  |
| 4. 107 years old | 9. 800 years old |
| 5. 34 years old  | 10. 1 year old   |

### ❑ Pre-Lesson C: Question and answer 1

- |                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. How old are you?   | _____ sai desu.                   |
| 2. What is your name? | _____ desu / _____ to moushimasu. |

### ❑ Pre-Lesson C: Question and answer 2

How old do I look?  
1-6. (answers will vary)

### ❑ Pre-Lesson D: Japanese translation

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. Mari:<br>Mari's Mother:   | I will go and come back. / I'll be back.<br>Have a good day. / Take care. / See you. |
| 2. Kenji:<br>Kenji's Mother: | I'm home / I'm back.<br>Welcome back home.   |

### ❑ Lesson 1: Word practice

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. お ka あ san | 2. い え          |
| 3. お to う san | 4. あ ka い       |
| 5. い mo う to  | 6. ka う         |
| 7. う sagi     | 8. え npitsu     |
| 9. お ne え san | 10. お moshiro い |
| 11. い su      | 12. お kiru      |

## □ Lesson 1: Hiragana matching

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| お | — | a |
| う | — | o |
| え | — | u |
| い | — | e |
| あ | — | i |

## □ Lesson 1: Question and answer

### Question

1. What is it?
2. Is it a towel?
3. What is it?
4. Is it a nose?
5. Is she Ms. Tanaka?
6. What is it?

### Answer

Haburashi desu.  
 いいえ、makura desu.  
 い nu desu.  
 いいえ、kuchi desu.  
 いいえ、Yamamoto san desu.  
 Beddo desu.

## □ Lesson 1: Japanese translation

- |                |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Tanaka san. | What is it? Is it a blanket? |
| Kobayashi san: | Please say it one more time  |
| Tanaka san:    | Is it a blanket?             |
| Kobayashi san: | No, it is a towel            |

## □ Lesson 1: English translation

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 1. Kouichi: | (あ nata wa) Masumi san desu ka.                   |
| Masumi:     | いいえ、Yasuko desu. (あ nata wa) Yuusuke san desu ka. |
| Kouichi:    | いいえ、Kouichi desu.                                 |

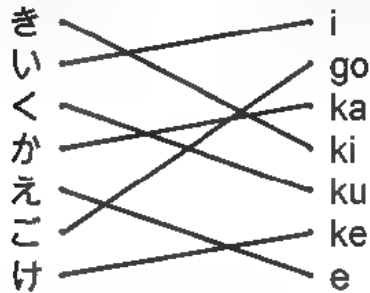
## □ Lesson 1: What would you say?

1. もう い chido い tte kudasa い.
2. Hajimemashite. \_\_\_\_\_ to moushimasu. Yoroshiku お nega い shimasu.
3. Nansa い ni miemasu ka
4. Nakamura san desu ka
5. Motto yukkuri い tte kudasai.

## □ Lesson 2: Word Practice

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. きい ro    | 2. きく        |
| 3. か minan  | 4. こうく n     |
| 5. こけ       | 6. いく        |
| 7. け mushi  | 8. こうこう      |
| 9. ぎ n い ro | 10. き n'ni く |
| 11. ごこ      | 12. こお ri    |

## □ Lesson 2: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 2: Question and answer 1

1. What is this?
2. What is this?
3. Is this a mirror?
4. Are these vegetables?

(こ re wa) < ruma desu.  
 (こ re wa) konpyu-ta- desu  
 いいえ、(こ re wa) mado desu.  
 いいえ、(こ re wa) furu-tsu desu

## □ Lesson 2: Question and answer 2

1. Which is a book?
2. Which is a vegetable?
3. Which is a fruit?

(1st picture) Kore desu.  
 (middle picture: onion) Kore desu.  
 (2nd picture: cherries) Kocchi desu.

## □ Lesson 2: Question and answer 3

- 1 Q. What is that over there?  
(あ re wa) nan desu か。
2. Q. What is this?  
こ re wa nan desu か。
- 3 Q. Is that a pillow?  
Sore wa makura desu か。
- 4 Q. What is that?  
Sore wa nan desu か。

A. That's a dog  
あ re wa い nu desu.  
  
 A: That's a toothbrush  
(Sore wa) haburashi desu  
  
 A. No, this is a towel  
いいえ、こ re wa taoru desu.  
  
 A: This is a book  
(こ re wa) hon desu.

## □ Lesson 2: Japanese translation

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 1 Satoko san: | Is that a book?                          |
| Shouta san    | No, it is a magazine                     |
| Satoko san:   | Please say it one more time. What is it? |
| Shouta san.   | This is a magazine.                      |

## □ Lesson 2: English translation

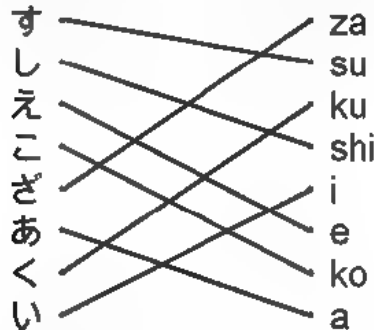
- |                    |                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Japanese person: | (あ nata wa) nihon へ が hanasemasu か。 |
| American person:   | Su こ shi                            |
| Japanese person:   | あ re wa nan desu か。                 |
| American person.   | Sore wa < ruma desu.                |
| Japanese person:   | あ ri が とう。                          |

### □ Lesson 3: Word practice

- 1 mura さき
- 3 し ro
5. すし
7. さ ru
- 9 あせ
- 11 ぞう

2. さす
- 4 そ tsugyo う
6. じか n
8. おじいさ n
10. あ n ぜ n
12. げ n ざい

### □ Lesson 3: Hiragana matching



### □ Lesson 3: Question and answer 1

#### Question

- 1 Who is this?
2. Is this Jenny?
- 3 Whose birds are these?
- 4 Whose mother is this?

#### Answer

Yo し da さ n de す  
 いいえ、Monika さ n de す。  
 Ta か こ san no tori de す。  
 Makoto (くん) no おかあさ n de す。

### □ Lesson 3: Question and answer 2 (sample answers)

#### Question

1. What's your name?
- 2 What's your grandmother's name?
- 3 What's your mother's car?
- 4 How old is your grandpa?
5. How old is your dad?

#### Answer

Yamada Yo し こ de す。  
 Yamada Ma さ み de す。  
 Toyota de す。  
 Nanaju う ご さい de す  
 ご ju う ni さい de す。

### □ Lesson 3: Japanese translation

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1 Kobayashi san: | Whose book is this?                          |
| Nakaya san:      | I don't know, maybe it is Mr. Tanaka's book. |

### □ Lesson 3: English translation

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 1. Terada san: | Tana か さ n de すか。                               |
| Yamada san:    | いいえ、Yamada de す。Tana か さ n wa dare de すか。       |
| Terada san:    | (Tana か さ n wa) こ baya し さ n no tomodachi de す。 |

### □ Lesson 3: Reading comprehension translation

- ① My name is Honda.
- ② I am 35 years old
- ③ My girlfriend's name is Terada.
- ④ She is 29 years old.

### □ Lesson 3: Reading comprehension questions

#### Question

1. Is Honda's girlfriend's name Tanaka?
2. Who is Terada?
3. Is Terada Yamada's girlfriend?
4. How old is Ms. Terada?

#### Answer

いいえ、Terada de す.\*  
 Honda さ n no か nojo de す.  
 いいえ、Honda san no か nojo de す  
**OR** いいえ、chi が い ma す  
 Niju う kyu う さい de す.

\* (Note: いいえ、Honda san no か nojo no name え wa in front of the answer above would be unnaturally long. Try to keep the answers simple.)

### □ Lesson 3: What would you say?

1. さ よう nara. (later you will learn itte き ma す)
2. お hayo う ござい ma す.
3. Wa か rima せ n.
4. あ ri が to う ござい ma す.

### □ Lesson 3: Short dialogue translation

Yoshida san.

Good afternoon, Ms. Ueki.

Ueki san:

Good afternoon, Mr. Yoshida. It's been a long time  
 Is your father doing well?

Yoshida san:

Yes he is fine. What is that?

Ueki san.

This is a camera. It's my hobby.

Yoshida san:

That's great!

Ueki san:

What is your (Yoshida san's) hobby?

Yoshida san:

My hobby is golf.

### □ Lesson 4: Word practice

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. wa たし  | 2. ただ        |
| 3. たつ     | 4. とつぜ n     |
| 5. ちぢ mu  | 6. てつだう      |
| 7. いたい    | 8. おとうさ n    |
| 9. hana ぢ | 10. いきど mari |
| 11. で nwa | 12. とどく      |

### □ Lesson 4: Hiragana matching

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| て | tsu |
| つ | da  |
| さ | chi |
| ち | te  |
| す | u   |
| ぢ | ji  |
| う | su  |
| だ |     |

## □ Lesson 4: Question and answer 1

### Question

- 1 What is this in Japanese?
- 2 What is this in Japanese?
- 3 What is this in English?
- 4 What is this in English?

### Answer

うさぎです。  
うしです。  
「Panda」です。  
「Lion」です。

## □ Lesson 4: Question and answer 2

- 1 What color is your car?
- 2 What color is your toothbrush?
- 3 What color are pandas?
- 4 What color are bananas?
- 5 Are elephants grey?

\_\_\_\_\_です。  
[any color] です。  
し ro と く ro です。  
きい ro (い) です。  
Ha い、そうです。 / Ha い、gure- です。

## □ Lesson 4: What would you say?

- 1 ご menna さい。 / す mima せ n.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ さ n no い nu wa nani い ro ですか
- 3 いいえ、ちがい ma す。( Ha い、そうです。 if you ARE Tanaka san)
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ wa, nihon ご で nan ですか。

## □ Lesson 4: Japanese translation

- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Takada san. | What color is (your) car?        |
| Kadota san:    | My car?                          |
| Takada san.    | Yes.                             |
| Kadota san:    | It's purple. How about your car? |
| Takada san.    | My car is silver and gold.       |

## □ Lesson 4: Reading comprehension translation

- ① Junko is 25 years old
- ② Her dad is 52 years old.
- ③ Her dad's name is Yoshihiro.
- ④ Junko's car and her dad's car are Hondas.
- ⑤ Dad's car is purple.
- ⑥ Junko's car is pink and blue

## □ Lesson 4: Reading comprehension questions

### Question

1. What color is Junko's car?
2. Whose car is the Honda?
4. Whose car is purple?
5. How old is Junko?
6. Who is 52 years old?

### Answer

Pinku to あお de す。  
Jun こさ n to Jun こさ n no お とうさ n no く ruma de す。  
お とうさ n no く ruma de す。  
Ni ju うごさい de す。  
Jun こさ n no お とうさ n de す。

## □ Lesson 4: Short dialogue translation

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Mr. Kobayashi. | What (kind of) car is your car, Mr. Tanaka? |
| Mr. Tanaka:    | My car is a Nissan.                         |
|                | What about yours?                           |
| Mr. Kobayashi: | My car is a Mitsubishi. Its color is red.   |
| Mr. Tanaka:    | I see. My car is white.                     |



### □ Lesson 5: Word practice

- |         |             |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. なつ   | 2. に hon    |
| 3. ねこ   | 4. yo なか    |
| 5. の mu | 6. ね ru     |
| 7. なに   | 8. むいぐ rumi |
| 9. にがい  | 10. おねえさ n  |
| 11. むく  | 12. の ru    |

### □ Lesson 5: Hiragana matching

|   |    |
|---|----|
| な | no |
| の | ni |
| か | ta |
| す | na |
| ぬ | ka |
| ね | nu |
| に | ne |
| た | su |

### □ Lesson 5: Question and answer 1

- | Question                        | Answer                           |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1a. Is this fish?               | いいえ、さかな ja ないです。                 |
| 1b. Well then, what is it?      | Chikin です。                       |
| 2a. Is this a book?             | いいえ、hon ja ないです。                 |
| 2b. Well then, what is it?      | し nbun です。                       |
| 3a. Is this a bowl and a spoon? | いいえ、(お) chawan と supu-n ja ないです。 |
| 3b. Well then, what are they?   | (お) chawan と (お) ha しです。         |
| 4a. Are these shoes?            | いいえ、くつ ja ないです。                  |
| 4b. Well then, what are they?   | ず bon です。                        |

### □ Lesson 5: Question and answer 2

- |                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Which one do you like/dislike? | こ re がすき / き ra いです。 |
| 2. Which one do you like/dislike? | こ re がすき / き ra いです。 |

### □ Lesson 5: Question and answer 3 (sample answers)

- | Question                   | Answer                        |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Do you like traveling?  | Ha い、すきです / いいえ、き ra いです。     |
| 2. Do you dislike cats?    | Ha い、き ra いです / いいえ、すきです。     |
| 3. Do you like vegetables? | Ha い、すきです / いいえ、すき ja ないです。   |
| 4. Do you like Japanese?   | Ha い、だいすきです / いいえ、だいき ra いです。 |
| 5. Does sushi taste good?  | Ha い、おいしいです / いいえ、おいしくないです。   |

## □ Lesson 5: Japanese translation

- 1 Yoshio san likes cars a lot
- 2 Yoshio san's cars are red and white  
(this sentence could mean, "Yoshio's car is red and white," but from the context of the other sentences we see that he has two cars.)
- 3 His white car is a Honda.
- 4 The red one is a Toyota.
- 5 Yoshio's father likes cars a lot  
(This would be better as "Yoshio's father also likes cars a lot," but we haven't learned the "also" particle.)
- 6 His father's cars are a gold car and a yellow car.
- 7 His mother does not like the yellow car.

## □ Lesson 5: Reading comprehension translation

- ① Satoko's boyfriend's name is Yoshio Tanaka
- ② Satoko is 25 years old.
- ③ Yoshio is 27 years old
- ④ Satoko likes shopping a lot.
- ⑤ Yoshio doesn't like shopping.
- ⑥ Yoshio likes work.
- ⑦ Satoko dislikes work
- ⑧ Satoko and Yoshio like travel a lot.

## □ Lesson 5: Reading comprehension questions

| Question                        | Answer                       |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Who is Satoko's boyfriend?    | たなか よしおさんです。                 |
| 2 Does Yoshio dislike his work? | いいえ、しごとがすきです。                |
| 3 How old is Satoko?            | にじゅうごさいです。                   |
| 4 Who likes shopping?           | さとこさんが (かいもの) がすきです。         |
| 5 Who likes traveling?          | さとこさんと よしおさんが (りょうこう) がすきです。 |

## □ Lesson 5: Short dialogue translation

Ms Mori: Do you like movies, Ms. Nishida?  
 Ms Nishida: Yes, I like them a lot.  
 Ms. Mori: Me, too. As for actors, who do you like?  
 Ms. Nishida: I like Harrison Ford.  
 Ms. Mori: Is that so? I like Brad Pitt.  
 Ms. Nishida: I also like Brad Pitt, too.

## □ Lesson 6: Word Practice

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. は ru       | 2. ひ ru ごは n  |
| 3. ふ yu       | 4. へい wa      |
| 5. えほ n       | 6. が n ば ru   |
| 7. はなび        | 8. か mi ぶく ro |
| 9. ひと me ぼ re | 10. < ra べ ru |
| 11. ひばな       | 12. え n びつ    |

### □ Lesson 6: Hiragana matching

|   |       |    |
|---|-------|----|
| ふ | _____ | pi |
| ぺ | _____ | pe |
| ぜ | _____ | bo |
| ぼ | _____ | gi |
| は | _____ | fu |
| た | _____ | ze |
| び | _____ | ta |
| ぎ | _____ | ha |

### □ Question and answer 1 (sample answers)

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Which one do/don't you want? | Ju-su が ほしいです / みずが ほしくないです。 |
| 2 Which one do/don't you want? | う ma が ほしいです / いぬが ほしくないです。  |

### □ Lesson 6: Question and answer 2 (sample answers)

- What color car do you like?  
し ro いく ruma が すぎです。
- Do you want a Japanese magazine?  
はい、ほしいです / いいえ、ほしくないです。
- Do you want a cold cola?  
はい、つ me たい ko-ra が ほしいです。  
いいえ、ko-ra が き ra いです。
- Is your TV new?  
はい、あた ra しいです。いいえ、あた ra しくないです。

### □ Lesson 6: Question and answer 3 (answers may vary)

- |            |                    |
|------------|--------------------|
| 1. Ichiro: | なにが ほしいですか。        |
| Yumiko:    | Konpyu-ta-が ほしいです。 |
| 2. Nurse:  | Ma < ra が ほしいですか。  |
| Patient:   | いいえ、ほしくないです。       |

### □ Lesson 6: English translation

- |          |                                      |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| George:  | な ma えは な n ですか。                     |
| Yu が ri: | Yu が ri です。あなたの な ma えは な n ですか。     |
| George:  | Jo-ji です。さ nju う yon さいです。な n さいですか。 |
| Yu が ri: | に ju う ro くさいです。                     |

## □ Lesson 6: Reading comprehension translation

- ① My name is Matsumoto
- ② I like the internet
- ③ I want a computer.
- ④ My friend Tashiro doesn't want a computer
- ⑤ Tashiro wants a red car.
- ⑥ I don't like red cars.
- ⑦ I like white cars.

## □ Lesson 6: Reading comprehension questions

1. What does Matsumoto like?
2. What is Matsumoto's friend's name?
3. What does Tashiro want?
4. Does Matsumoto like red cars?
5. What color car does Matsumoto like?

Inta-netto が 好きです。  
 たし ro ( < n ) です。  
 あかいく ruma が ほしいです。  
 いいえ、好き ja ないです。  
 し ro いく ruma が 好きです。

## □ Lesson 6: Short dialogue translation

Mr. Yoshida:  
 Karen:  
 Mr. Yoshida:  
 Karen:  
 Mr. Yoshida:  
 Karen:

Please come in, Karen.  
 Thank you (I will come in) .  
 What drink would you like?  
 Let's see... I want cola.  
 Wait a minute. Here you are  
 Thank you.

## □ Lesson 7: Word practice

1. も ri
3. む ri
5. みる
7. たべもの
9. のみもの
11. まほう

2. もみじ
4. めだつ
6. めがね
8. まも ru
10. むしあつい
12. みみず

## □ Lesson 7: Hiragana matching

|   |   |    |
|---|---|----|
| に | — | mu |
| む | — | mi |
| も | — | nu |
| ぬ | — | ni |
| み | — | o  |
| ま | — | mo |
| お | — | me |
| め | — | ma |

## □ Lesson 7: Grammar drill

1. みか n が 好きです。でも、rin こは 好き ja ないです。
2. いぬ が ほしいです。でも、ねこ は ほしくないです。
3. いちご が おいしいです。でも、remon は おいしいくないです。

## □ Lesson 7: What would you say? (sample answers)

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 Where is a good (delicious) restaurant? | _____ です。                       |
| 2 Where is your house?                    | とう kyo う です。                    |
| 3 Do you want a Japanese car?             | はい、ほしいです。/ いいえ、ほしくないです。         |
| 4 Do you like green apples?               | はい、すきです。/ いいえ、すき ja ないです。       |
| 5 Is your TV new?                         | はい、あた ra しいです。/ いいえ、ふ ru いです。   |
| 6 What color is your bicycle?             | あか (い) です。                      |
| 7 Do you want cold water?                 | はい、ほしいです。<br>いいえ、ju-su が ほしいです。 |

## □ Lesson 7: Short dialogue 1

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mr. Tanaka: | Is your house over there, Mike?                                    |
| Mike        | No, it's there.  |
| Mr. Tanaka: | Huh? Where is it? I don't know (which one?) Is it the green house? |
| Mike        | No, the green house is my friend's house. The yellow one is mine.  |
| Mr. Tanaka: | Oh, I see.   |

## □ Lesson 7: Short dialogue 2

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mr. Tanaka: | Do you like sushi, Mike?                                   |
| Mike        | Yes, I love it.  |
| Mr. Tanaka: | What do you like?  |
| Mike        | I like tuna and shrimp.                                    |
| Mr. Tanaka: | I see. I like halibut and squid. Do you like Japanese tea? |
| Mike        | No. Japanese tea is not delicious, but I like cola.        |

## □ Lesson 8: Word practice

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. わ ra う    | 2. だいこん       |
| 3. みずを のむ    | 4. わ ru い     |
| 5. わたし       | 6. ほんを かう     |
| 7. こんや       | 8. わす reru    |
| 9. えいがを み ru | 10. きんぞく      |
| 11. かんたん     | 12. すしを たべ ru |

## □ Lesson 8: Hiragana matching

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| は | yu     |
| よ | to     |
| ゆ | n      |
| わ | wo (o) |
| と | ha     |
| や | wa     |
| を | yo     |
| ん | ya     |

## □ Lesson 8: Questions (sample answers)

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 When is your father's birthday?         | Ju うがつ に ju ういちにちです。          |
| 2 What month and what day is Christmas?   | Ju うにがつ に ju うごにちです。          |
| 3 What month do you like?                 | こがつが すきです。                    |
| 4 What month and what day is today?       | Kyo うは、さ n がつ とおかです。          |
| 5 What month and what date was yesterday? | きのうは、さ n がつ ここのかでした。          |
| 6 Is Children's Day is July 4th?          | いいえ、ちがいます。<br>いいえ、こがつ いくつかです。 |

## □ Lesson 8: Dates (sample answers)

- |                     |              |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 1 Mother's birthday | しちがつ みっか     |
| 2 Constitution Day  | こがつ みっか      |
| 3 March 15          | さんがつ ju うごにち |
| 4 Culture Day       | ju ういちがつ みっか |
| 5 Children's Day    | こがつ いくつか     |
| 6 April 20          | しがつ はつか      |

## □ Lesson 8: Japanese translation

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Imai san:   | When is your birthday?                                   |
| Yamada san: | It is March 23rd. And yours?                             |
| Imai san:   | My birthday is tomorrow.                                 |
| Yamada san: | Congratulations! How old are you? (How old will you be?) |
| Imai san:   | 38 years old.  |

## □ Lesson 8: Reading comprehension translation

- ① My name is Yukiko.
- ② Yesterday was my birthday
- ③ I am 27 years old.
- ④ My birthday is (on) Christmas.
- ⑤ My friend's present was (a set of) red chopsticks.
- ⑥ My father's present was a Japanese language book.
- ⑦ I really like Japan

## □ Lesson 8: Reading comprehension questions

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. When was Yukiko's birthday?                       | きのうでした。 / 12 がつ 25 にちでした。 |
| 2. How old is Yukiko today?                          | に ju うななさいです。             |
| 3. What color chopsticks were her friend's present ? | あかい (お) はしでした。            |
| 4. What was her dad's present?                       | にほんごの ほんでした。              |
| 5. Does Yukiko dislike Japan?                        | いいえ、にほんが だいすきです。          |

## □ Lesson 8: Short dialogue translation

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| Mr. Honda: | What day of the month is it today?                             |
| Mr. Hino:  | It's the ninth   |
| Mr. Honda: | What? Isn't in the seventh?                                    |
| Mr. Hino:  | No, tomorrow is the tenth.                                     |
| Mr. Honda: | What am I going to do? Yesterday was my girlfriend's birthday! |
| Mr. Hino:  | Really!?   |

### □ Lesson 9: Word practice

1. あたらしい
3. れんあい
5. みせる
7. べんり
9. かくれんぼ
11. ろうか

2. しる
4. りんご
6. れん shu う
8. うるおい
10. どうろ
12. まわりみち

### □ Lesson 9: Hiragana matching

|   |       |     |
|---|-------|-----|
| る | _____ | ru  |
| し | _____ | shi |
| り | _____ | ra  |
| ろ | _____ | i   |
| ぬ | _____ | ro  |
| れ | _____ | ra  |
| い | _____ | nu  |
| ら | _____ | ri  |

### □ Lesson 9: Event dates

1. Kurisumasu
2. こどものひ
3. がんたん
4. (わたしの) たん jo うび

ju にがつ に ju うごにち  
 ごがつ いくつか  
 いちがつ ついたち  
 \_\_\_\_\_ がつ \_\_\_\_\_ にち

### □ Lesson 9: Questions (answers vary based on when answered)

1. What day of the week is the day after tomorrow?
2. What day was the date and month before yesterday?
3. What is the date and month of your birthday?
4. What year was last year?
5. What day of the week was the 1<sup>st</sup> of last month?
6. What day is next Thursday?
7. What day was last Saturday?
8. What year is next year?

~ようびです。  
 ~にちでした。  
 (answers vary)  
 にせん~ねんでした。  
 ~ようびでした。  
 ~にちです。  
 ~にちでした。  
 にせん~ねんです。

### □ Lesson 9: Japanese translation

- ① Today is December 30th.
- ② The day after tomorrow is New Year's Day.
- ③ This year's New Year's Day is on Thursday.
- ④ Last year it was Wednesday

## □ Lesson 9: Short dialogue translation

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Yoko:     | This Friday is my birthday                           |
| Takahiro: | Really? Happy birthday!                              |
| Yoko:     | Thanks.  |
| Takahiro: | What year were you born?                             |
| Yoko:     | I was born in 1973                                   |
| Takahiro: | Me, too! My birthday is June 3 <sup>rd</sup> , 1973. |
| Yoko:     | Really?  |
| Takahiro: | When is your birthday party?                         |
| Yoko:     | It's this Saturday.                                  |

## □ Lesson 10: Word practice

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. とうちゃく  | 2. さんびゃく   |
| 3. としょかん  | 4. ぎゅうにゅう  |
| 5. さんみゃく  | 6. しょうばい   |
| 7. じゅうたん  | 8. でんびょう   |
| 9. きょうだい  | 10. きょうりゅう |
| 11. りゅうがく | 12. ぎゅうどん  |

## □ Lesson 10: Hiragana matching

|    |     |
|----|-----|
| ぎゃ | nyu |
| みよ | shu |
| しゅ | rya |
| びよ | ja  |
| りゃ | myo |
| ちよ | pyo |
| じゃ | cho |
| にゅ | gya |

## □ Lesson 10: Grammar drill 1

1. Ke-ki を おねがいします / Ke-ki を ください。
2. Piza を おねがいします / Piza を ください。
3. Sandoicchi と ju-su を おねがいします / Sandoicchi と ju-su を ください。
4. Hanba-ga- と Poteto を おねがいします / Hanba-ga- と Poteto を ください。

## □ Lesson 10: Grammar drill 2 (sample answers)

1. はい、あたらしい terebi が ほしいです。あたらしい konpyu-ta-も ほしいです。  
いいえ、あたらしい terebi が ほしくないです。でも、あたらしい konpyu-ta-が ほしいです。
2. はい、はるが だいすきです。でも、なつは すきじゃないです。  
いいえ、はるが すきじゃないです。なつが すきです。
3. いいえ、ko-ra は おいしくないです。ju-su が おいしいです。  
はい、ko-ra は おいしいです。ju-su も おいしいです。
4. いいえ、わたしの くるまは おおきくないです。でも、おかあさんの くるまは おおきいです。  
はい、わたしの くるまは おおきいです。おかあさんの くるまも おおきいです。



## □ Lesson 10: Japanese translation

Waitress: Welcome!  
 Customer: A menu please  
 5 minutes later...  
 Customer: Excuse me  
 Waitress: Yes.  
 Customer: Spaghetti, please.  
 Waitress: What would you like to drink?  
 Customer: Water please.  
 Waitress: Okay, Please wait a few moments.  
 10 minutes later...  
 Waitress: Here you go  
 Customer: Thank you. Please give me tea and a cola.  
 Waitress: Okay, Please wait a few moments  
 40 minutes later...  
 Customer: How much is it?  
 Waitress: 2,521 yen.  
 Customer: Okay  
 Waitress: The change is 479 yen. Thank you very much.

## □ Lesson 10: Short dialogue translation

Waitress: Welcome. Here is our menu  
 Sayuri: The tempura is tasty here  
 Chieko: Really? Well then, I would like tempura.  
 Sayuri: I like tempura, too. But today I would like tonkatsu.  
 Chieko: Ok then, tempura and tonkatsu please.  
 Waitress: Certainly. What would you like for a drink?  
 Sayuri: I would like an iced tea.  
 Chieko: (Green) tea for me, please  
 Waitress: Certainly.

## □ Lesson 11: Japanese questions (sample answers)

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1. How many legs does a horse have?               | よんほんです。     |
| 2. How many stars are there on the American flag? | ごじゅっこです。    |
| 3. How many pencils do you want?                  | ごほん、ほしいです。  |
| 4. How many pizzas do you want?                   | いちまい、ほしいです。 |

## □ Lesson 11: English questions

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. しろい ほしは いくつですか。   | よつつです。 / よんこです。    |
| 2. えんぴつは なんぼんですか。  | はっぽんです。            |
| 3. ゆびは なんぼんですか。  | じゅっぽんです。 / じっぽんです。 |
| 4. はたは なんぼんですか。  | ろっぽんです。            |
| (flags on a pole use the なんぼん counter. If not on a pole, it would be the なんまい counter) |                    |
| 6. とけいは いくつですか。  | よつつです。             |

## □ Lesson 11: Grammar drill

- 1 Chiketto をにまい おねがいします / Chiketto をにまい ください。
- 2 たまごをじゅうにこ おねがいします / たまごをじゅうにこ ください。
- 3 Chi-zuba-ga-を ふたつ おねがいします / Chi-zuba-ga-を ふたつ ください。
- 4 えんぴつをさんぽん おねがいします / えんぴつをさんぽん ください。
- 5 にんじんをよんぽん おねがいします / にんじんをよんぽん ください。

## □ Lesson 11: Short dialogue

Sushi Chef: Welcome.  
 Jon: Excuse me, please give me salmon roe (salmon eggs) and yellow tail  
 Sushi Chef: Okay! How about the customer there?  
 Masami: I'll have miso soup and a green tea, please.  
 What is today's recommendation?  
 Sushi Chef: Let's see... The sweet shrimp is good today  
 Masami: Then give me one of those, please.  
 Jon: Can I also have green soybeans, please?  
 Masami: I want green soybeans, too. Give us two plates, please.  
 Sushi Chef: Got it! (I have understood)

## □ Lesson 12: Grammar drill

| Dictionary Form | Polite Forms   |          |          |           |
|-----------------|----------------|----------|----------|-----------|
|                 | Present/Future |          | Past     |           |
|                 | positive       | negative | positive | negative  |
| いく              | いきます           | いきません    | いきました    | いきませんでした  |
| くる              | きます            | きません     | きました     | きませんでした   |
| かえる             | かえります          | かえりません   | かえりました   | かえりませんでした |
| わかる             | わかります          | わかりません   | わかりました   | わかりませんでした |

## □ Lesson 12: Substitution drill

1. きょう、ぎんこうに いきません。  
 きょう、がっこうに いきません。  
 きょう、makudonarudoに いきません。  
 きょう、ともだちのいえに いきません。
2. たなかさんは、おととい とうきょうに かえりました。  
 たなかさんは、きのう とうきょうに かえりました。  
 たなかさんは、せんしゅうのきんようび とうきょうに かえりました。  
 たなかさんは、せんげつのいつか とうきょうに かえ りました。
3. やまもとさんは、にほんに かえりませんでした。  
 やまもとさんは、amerikaに かえりませんでした。  
 やまもとさんは、rosanzerusuに かえりませんでした。  
 やまもとさんは、shikagoに かえりませんでした。

4. やまださんは、さんがつにここにきます。  
 やまださんは、らいげつのふつかにここにきます。  
 やまださんは、らいしゅうのどうようびにここにきます。  
 やまださんは、らいねんのごがつにここにきます。
5. おかあさんのいえに いきます。  
 おかあさんのいえに いきません。  
 おかあさんのいえに いきました。  
 おかあさんのいえに いきませんでした。
6. たむらさんのおとうさんは、にほんごがわかります。  
 たむらさんのおとうさんは、えいごがわかります。  
 たむらさんのおとうさんは、konpyu-ta-がわかります。  
 たむらさんのおとうさんは、ひらがなとかたかながわかります。

## □ Lesson 12: Reading comprehension translation

- ① This is America's Chicago city
- ② Mari went to Japan on October 3rd.
- ③ Yesterday she returned to Chicago
- ④ Mari and her friend Yoshiko are going to a party tomorrow.
- ⑤ Mari's clothing (for the party) is white.
- ⑥ Yoshiko's are orange.
- ⑦ Tomorrow is Halloween
- ⑧ Mari really likes parties.
- ⑨ In September she went to Yoshiko's Father's birthday party.
- ⑩ Next year on July 10th she is going to Korea.

## □ Lesson 12: Reading comprehension questions

1. Where did Mari return to yesterday?  
 Shikago に かえりました。
2. What is Mari's friend's name?  
 よしこさん です。
3. What is the month and day of the month today?  
 じゅうがつ さんじゅうにちです。  
 (because tomorrow is Halloween in sentence 7)
4. Where did Mari go in September?  
 よしこさんのおとうさんの たんじょうび pa-ti-に いきました。
5. Where is Mari going next year?  
 かんこくに いきます。
6. Where is here?  
 Shikago しです。OR Amerika の Shikago しです。
7. Where did Mari go in August?  
 Did this one confuse you? I should have because we don't really know where Mari went in August.  
 So the answer is: わかりません。

## □ Lesson 12: Short dialogue translation

Ms Smith: Good afternoon, Mr. Tanaka.  
 Mr Tanaka: Good afternoon, Ms Smith. It sure is hot isn't it?  
 Ms Smith: Yes, it's hot.  
 Mr. Tanaka: Where are you going?  
 Ms Smith: I'm going to school (from) now.  
 Mr. Tanaka: What school is it?  
 Ms Smith: It's Japanese language school.  
 Mr. Tanaka: I see. I'm going to work now.

## □ Lesson 12: English translation

Ryouhei: ちゅうごくに いきます。  
 Nobuko: わたしは きょねん いきました。いつ いきますか。  
 Ryouhei: らいげつの はつかです。  
 Nobuko: いつ かえりますか。  
 Ryouhei: たぶん さんじゅうにちです / たぶん さんじゅうにちに かえります。  
 Nobuko: いいですね。

## □ Lesson 13: Grammar drill

- 1 ろくじ ごふん
- 2 くじ にじゅうぶん
- 3 さんじ よんじゅうぶん
- 4 はちじはん
- 5 じゅうじ よんじゅうごふん
- 6 じゅうにじ ごじゅうさんぶん
- 7 よじはん
- 8 にじじゅうななぶん
- 9 しちじ ななぶん

## □ Lesson 13: Question and answer (answers may vary)

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. From what time does your work/school start?         | しごとは、くじからです。                   |
| 2. What time do you go to work/school?                 | はちじに がっこうに いきます。               |
| 3. What days of the week do you go to work/school?     | げつようびから きんようびまで<br>がっこうに いきます。 |
| 4. What time do you go home?                           | ろくじに いえに かえります。                |
| 5. What time is it now?                                | いま、よじはんです。                     |
| 6. From what time to what time is your Japanese class? | ごじから ろくじはんまでです。                |
| 7. Who is your Japanese teacher?                       | やまだせんせいです。                     |
| 8. From what month to what month is winter?            | じゅうにがつから にがつまでです。              |
| 9. From what month to what month is summer?            | ろくがつから くがつまでです。                |

## □ Lesson 13: Reading comprehension translation

- ① This is a Japanese language school.
- ② Sam came here at 10:00AM
- ③ John came at 10:15.
- ④ Today's class is from 10:30 to 1:00PM.
- ⑤ Sam will return home at 2:00.
- ⑥ She will go to work at 4:00PM.

- ⑦ Sam's job is from 4.30 to 1.30AM.
- ⑧ Sam's job is a hotel job
- ⑨ John will go to Spanish school at 2:30.
- ⑩ Spanish school is until three.
- ⑪ He will return home at six
- ⑫ He has a part time job from 8 00PM
- ⑬ He goes at 7:55.
- ⑭ His part time job is until twelve
- ⑮ John's part time job is McDonald's.

### □ Lesson 13: Reading comprehension questions

- 1 Where is here?  
にほんこの がっこうです。
- 2 Who came to school at ten o'clock?  
Samu でした。
- 3 When is today's class?  
じゅうじから ごこいちじまで です。
4. From what time until what time is Sam's work?  
よじはんから ごぜんいちじまで です。
- 5 What time did Sam return home?  
にじに かえりました。
6. From what time until what time is John's part time job?  
ごごはちじから じゅうにじまでです。
7. What time did John come to Japanese school?  
じゅうじ じゅうごふんに きました。
- 8 Where did John go at 2 30?  
Supein この がっこうに いきました。

### □ Lesson 13: Japanese translation

- 1 A: From when do you work? / When does your work start?  
B: It starts from February 8<sup>th</sup>.  
A: From what time until what time is the job?  
B: It is from 8:00 A.M to 4:00 P.M.
- 2 A: What time is it now?  
B 4 20  
A: I am going home at 4:30.  
B: Where is your house?  
A: It's over there.
3. A: I am returning to Japan from tomorrow. (*perfectly correct sentence in Japanese.*)  
B: Until when?  
A: Until August 15<sup>th</sup>.  
B Is that so? That's nice.

## □ Lesson 13: English translation

- 1 A: いつここにきましたか。  
B: くじにきました。  
A: ともだちはどこですか。  
B: ともだちはきませんでした。  
A: いまともだちはどこですか。  
B: いえにいます。
- 2 A: なんじのひこうきですか。/ ひこうきはなんじですか。  
B: ごぜんじゅうじはんです。  
A: なんじにこうこうにいきますか。  
B: くじにいきます。  
A: わかりました。
- 3 A: Arubaitoはなんじからですか。  
B: いちじからです。  
A: Arubaitoがすきですか。  
B: いいえ、すきじゃないです。

## □ Lesson 13: Particles

- 1 わたしのしごとははちじからごじまでです。
2. せんげつのじゅうごにちはもくようびでした。
- 3 なんじにいえにかえりますか。
4. やまださんのくるまはしろとgure-です。
- 5 いぬがすきです。でも、ねこはきらいです。
- 6 あたらしいじてんしゃがほしいです。
- 7 どれがたなかさんのほんですか。
8. かようびにとうきょうにいきます。
- 9 Hanba-ga-とpotatoを おねがいします。Ko-ra も おねがいします

## □ Lesson 13: Short dialogue translation

- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| Mr. Watanabe:  | Are you also working from 8 00 tomorrow, Mr. Hashimoto?             |
| Mr. Hashimoto: | No, tomorrow I'm off.   |
| Mr. Watanabe:  | That's nice. Where are you going, tomorrow?                         |
| Mr. Hashimoto: | I'm going to Osaka.   |
| Mr. Watanabe:  | (By) airplane?  |
| Mr. Hashimoto: | Yes, (by) the nine o'clock plane I'm going to the airport at eight. |
| Mr. Watanabe:  | Is that so? When are you coming back?                               |
| Mr. Hashimoto: | I'm coming back to Tokyo on next Tuesday.                           |

## English Glossary

### #

|            |                 |          |
|------------|-----------------|----------|
| 0          | rei, maru, zero | れい、まる、ゼロ |
| 1          | ichi            | いち       |
| 2          | ni              | に        |
| 3          | san             | さん       |
| 4          | shi, yon        | し、よん     |
| 5          | go              | ご        |
| 6          | roku            | ろく       |
| 7          | shichi nana     | しち、なな    |
| 8          | hachi           | はち       |
| 9          | ku, kyuu        | く、きゅう    |
| 10         | juu             | じゅう      |
| 1 minute   | ippun           | いっぶん     |
| 10 minutes | juppun          | じゅっぶん    |
| 11 minutes | juuippun        | じゅういっぶん  |
| 12 minutes | juunifun        | じゅうにぶん   |
| 13 minutes | juusanpun       | じゅうさんぶん  |
| 14 minutes | juuyonpun       | じゅうよんぶん  |
| 15 minutes | juugofun        | じゅうごぶん   |
| 16 minutes | juuoppun        | じゅうろっぶん  |
| 17 minutes | juunanafun      | じゅうななぶん  |
| 18 minutes | juuhachifun     | じゅうはちぶん  |
| 18 minutes | juuhachifun     | じゅうはちぶん  |
| 19 minutes | juukyuufun      | じゅうきゅうぶん |
| 2 minutes  | nifun           | にぶん      |
| 20 minutes | nijuppun        | にじゅっぶん   |
| 25 minutes | nijuugofun      | にじゅうごぶん  |
| 3 minutes  | sanpun          | さんぶん     |
| 30 minutes | sanjuppun       | さんじゅっぶん  |
| 35 minutes | sanjuugofun     | さんじゅうごぶん |
| 4 minutes  | yonpun          | よんぶん     |
| 40 minutes | yonjuppun       | よんじゅっぶん  |
| 45 minutes | yonjuugofun     | よんじゅうごぶん |
| 5 minutes  | gofun           | ごぶん      |
| 50 minutes | gojuppun        | ごじゅっぶん   |
| 55 minutes | gojuugofun      | ごじゅうごぶん  |
| 6 minutes  | roppun          | ろっぶん     |
| 60 minutes | rokujuppun      | ろくじゅっぶん  |
| 7 minutes  | nanafun         | ななぶん     |
| 8 minutes  | hachifun        | はちぶん     |
| 8 minutes  | happun          | はっぶん     |
| 9 minutes  | kyuufun         | きゅうぶん    |

### A

|                     |        |       |
|---------------------|--------|-------|
| a girl's first name | satoko | さとこ   |
| a joke              | joudan | じょうだん |
| acorn               | dongun | どんぐり  |
| actor               | haiyuu | はいゆう  |
| afternoon           | gogo   | ごご    |

airplane  
airport  
AM  
America  
an announcement  
ant  
apple  
April  
August

## B

baby  
banana  
bank  
basketball  
bath  
bear  
bed  
beef  
bicycle  
big  
bird  
birthday  
black (adj.)  
black (noun)  
blanket  
blue (adj.)  
blue (noun)  
boiled rice  
book  
bowl  
Brad Pitt (actor)  
bread  
brown (adj.)  
brown (noun)  
bullet train  
bus  
business card  
but

## C

cake  
calendar  
California  
camera  
Canada  
car  
carbonation  
carpet  
carrot  
cat  
cellular phone  
chair  
change  
cheeseburger

hikouki  
kuukou  
gozen  
amerika  
happyou  
ari  
ringo  
shigatsu  
hachigatsu

akachan  
banana  
ginkou  
basuketto booru  
ofuro  
kuma  
beddo  
bi-fu  
jitensha  
ookii  
tori  
tanjoubi  
kuroi  
kuro  
moufu  
aoi  
ao  
gohan  
hon  
ochawan, chawan  
Braddo Pitto  
pan  
chairou  
chairou  
shinkansen  
basu  
meishi  
demo

keeki  
karenda-  
karifornia  
kamera  
kanada  
kuruma  
tansan  
juutan  
ninjin  
neko  
keitaidenwa  
isu  
otsuri  
chi-zuba-ga-

ひこうき  
くこう  
ごぜん  
アメノカ  
はっぴょう  
あり  
りんご  
しがつ  
はちがつ

あかちゃん  
バナナ  
ぎんこう  
バスケットボール  
おふろ  
くま  
ベッド  
ビーフ  
じてんしゃ  
おおきい  
とり  
たんじょうび  
くろい  
くろ  
もうふ  
あおい  
あお  
ごはん  
ほん  
おちゃわん, ちゃわん  
ブラッド・ピット  
パン  
ちゃいろい  
ちゃいろ  
しんかんせん  
バス  
めいし  
でも

ケーキ  
カレンダー  
カリフォルニア  
かめら  
カナダ  
くるま  
たんさん  
じゅうたん  
にんじん  
ねこ  
けいたいでんわ  
いす  
おつり  
チーズバーガー



chest  
 chestnut  
 Chicago  
 chicken  
 Children's Day  
 China  
 chopsticks  
 Christmas  
 cigarettes  
 city  
 class  
 clear  
 clock  
 clothing, clothes  
 cockroach  
 coffee  
 cola  
 cold  
 cold drinking water  
 cold to the touch  
 color  
 computer  
 confusion  
 Constitution Day  
 contact  
 contents  
 cow  
 crab  
 Culture Day  
 cup; glass  
 customer, guest

mune  
 kuri  
 shikago  
 chikin  
 kodomonohi  
 chuugoku  
 ohashi, hashi  
 kurisumasu  
 tabako  
 ~shi  
 jugyou  
 toumei  
 tokei  
 fuku  
 gokuburi  
 ko-hi-  
 ko-ra  
 samui  
 ohiya  
 tsumetai  
 iro  
 konpyu-ta-  
 konran  
 kenpoukinenbi  
 renraku  
 mokuji  
 ushi  
 kani  
 bunkanohi  
 koppu  
 okyakusan

むね  
 くり  
 シカゴ  
 チキン  
 こどものひ  
 ちゅうごく  
 おはし, はし  
 クリスマス  
 たばこ  
 ~し  
 じゅぎょう  
 とうめい  
 とけい  
 ふく  
 ごきぶり  
 コーヒー  
 コーラ  
 さむい  
 おひや  
 つめたい  
 いろ  
 コンピューター  
 こんらん  
 けんぼうきねんぴ  
 れんらく  
 もくじ  
 うし  
 かに  
 ぶんかのひ  
 コップ  
 おきゅくさん

## D

date of birth  
 day after tomorrow  
 day before yesterday  
 day off, break  
 dear, longed for  
 December  
 dessert  
 diagonal  
 diary  
 dictionary  
 difficult  
 dinosaur  
 dislike, hate  
 doesn't taste good  
 dog  
 dollars  
 down  
 drink, drinks  
 drink, drinks  
 duck

seinengappi  
 asatte  
 ototoi  
 yasumi  
 natsukashii  
 juunigatsu  
 deza-to  
 naname  
 nikki  
 jisho  
 muzukashii  
 kyouryuu  
 kirai  
 oishikunai  
 inu  
 doru  
 shita  
 onomimono  
 nomimono  
 ahiru

せいねんがっぴ  
 あさって  
 おととい  
 やすみ  
 なつかしい  
 じゅうにがつ  
 デザート  
 ななめ  
 にっき  
 じしょ  
 むずかしい  
 きょうりゅう  
 きらい  
 おいしくない  
 いぬ  
 ドル  
 した  
 おのみもの  
 のみもの  
 あひる

**E**

ear  
east  
egg  
eight o'clock  
elephant  
eleven o'clock  
explosion  
eye

**F**

face  
father  
February  
finger  
fire truck  
fish  
five o'clock  
flag  
flowers  
food  
foot; leg  
forgotten item  
fork  
four o'clock  
fox  
free time  
French fries  
Friday  
friend  
frog  
from now / from now on  
frost  
fruit  
fruit  
fun park  
futon

**G**

gambling  
giraffe  
glasses  
gold  
Golden Week  
goldfish  
golf  
good afternoon  
good bye, farewell  
good morning  
good night  
graffiti  
grandfather  
grandmother  
grapes

mimi  
higashi  
tamago  
hachiji  
zou  
juuchiji  
bakuatsu  
me

kao  
otousan  
nigatsu  
yubi  
shoubousha  
sakana  
goji  
hata  
hana  
tabemono  
ashi  
wasuremono  
fo-ku  
yoji  
kitsune  
hima  
poteto  
kinyoubi  
tomodachi  
kaeru  
imakara  
shimo  
furu-tsu  
kudamono  
yuuenchi  
futon

みみ  
ひがし  
たまご  
はちじ  
ぞう  
じゅういちじ  
ばくはつ  
め

かお  
おとうさん  
にがつ  
ゆび  
しょうぼうしゃ  
さかな  
ごじ  
はた  
はな  
たべもの  
あし  
わすれもの  
フォーク  
よじ  
きつね  
ひま  
ポテト  
きんようび  
ともだち  
かえる  
いまから  
しも  
フルーツ  
くだもの  
ゆうえんち  
ふとん

gyanburu  
kirin  
megane  
kiniro  
goruden wi-ku  
kingyo  
gorufu  
konnichiwa  
sayounara  
ohayou gozaimasu  
oyasuminasai  
rakugaki  
ojiisan  
obaasan  
budou

ギャンブル  
きりん  
めがね  
きんいろ  
ゴールデンウィーク  
きんぎょ  
ゴルフ  
こんにちは  
さようなら  
おはよう ございます  
おやすみなさい  
らくがき  
おじいさん  
おばあさん  
ぶどう

grass  
gray  
gray  
green  
green onion  
green tea  
gun

## H

half past (:30)  
halibut  
hallway  
hand  
Harrison Ford (actor)  
head  
heat pad  
hello (on the phone)  
her, she, girlfriend  
here, this place  
high pressure  
him, he, boyfriend  
hobby  
homework  
horse  
hot  
house  
house fly  
How are you? (Are you fine?)  
How many cylindrical objects?  
How many round objects?  
How many thin and flat objects?  
How many things?  
How much?

## I

I, me (male or female)  
I, me (males only)  
ice cream  
I'm fine  
imitation  
Independence Day  
inside  
internet

## J

January  
Japan  
Japanese language  
Japanese teacher  
juice  
July  
June

shibafu  
guree  
hairro  
midori  
negi  
ocha  
teppou

han  
hirame  
rouka  
te  
Harison Fo-do  
atama  
kairo  
moshimoshi  
kanojo  
koko  
kouatsu  
kare  
shumi  
shukudai  
uma  
atsui  
ie  
hae  
genki desu ka  
nanbon  
nanko  
nanmai  
ikutsu  
ikura

watashi  
boku  
aisu kuri-mu  
genki desu  
mane  
dokuritsu kinenbi  
naka  
inta-netto

ichigatsu  
nihon  
nihongo  
nihongo no sensei  
ju-su  
shichigatsu  
rokugatsu

しばふ  
グレー  
はいいろ  
みどり  
ねぎ  
おちゃ  
てっぽう

はん  
ひらめ  
ろうか  
て  
ハリソン・フォード  
あたま  
かいろ  
もしもし  
かのじょ  
ここ  
こうあつ  
かれ  
しゅみ  
しゅくだい  
うま  
あつい  
いえ  
はえ  
げんき です か  
なんぼん  
なんこ  
なんまい  
いくつ  
いくら

わたし  
ぼく  
アイス クリーム  
げんき です  
まね  
どくりつきねんぴ  
なか  
インターネット

いちがつ  
にほん  
にほんご  
にほんごの せんせい  
ジュース  
しちがつ  
ろくがつ

**K**

key  
kindergarten  
Kobe (city)  
Korea

kagi  
youchien  
koube  
kankoku

かぎ  
ようちえん  
こうべ  
かんこく

**L**

landmark  
language  
laptop computer  
Las Vegas  
last month  
last week  
last year  
left  
lemon  
lettuce  
light blue  
like  
lion  
liquid, fluid  
lizard  
lobster  
Los Angeles  
low pressure

mejirushi  
~go  
no-to pasokon  
rasu begasu  
sengetsu  
senshuu  
kyonen  
hidari  
remon  
retasu  
mizuiro  
suki  
raion  
ekitai  
tokage  
robutsu-  
rosanzerosu  
teitsui

めじるし  
~ご  
ノートパソコン  
ラスベガス  
せんげつ  
せんしゅう  
きょねん  
ひだり  
レモン  
レタス  
みずいろ  
すき  
ライオン  
えきたい  
とかげ  
ロボスター  
ロサンゼルス  
ていあつ

**M**

magazine  
March  
married couple  
May  
maybe  
meat  
menu  
milk  
mirror  
miso soup  
Monday  
money  
monkey  
monster  
moonlight  
morning  
mother  
mouse  
mouth  
movie  
Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss  
music

zasshi  
sangatsu  
fuufu  
gogatsu  
tabun  
niku  
menyu-  
miruku  
kagami  
misoshiru  
getsuyoubi  
okane  
saru  
kaijuu  
gekkou  
gozen  
okaasan  
nezumi  
kuchi  
eiga  
~san (after name)  
ongaku

ざっし  
さんがつ  
ふうふ  
ごがつ  
たぶん  
にく  
メニュー  
ミルク  
かがみ  
みそしる  
げつようび  
おかね  
さる  
かいじゅう  
げっこう  
ごぜん  
おかあさん  
ねずみ  
くち  
えいが  
さん  
おんがく

**N**

name  
nationality  
new

namae  
~jin  
atarashii

なまえ  
~じん  
あたらしい

New Year's Day  
 newspaper  
 next month  
 next week  
 next year  
 nice, good  
 nine o'clock  
 no  
 north  
 nose  
 November  
 now

## O

October  
 of course  
 Oh!  
 old  
 old person  
 one o'clock  
 onion  
 orange (color)  
 orange (fruit)  
 outside  
 over there, that place over there

## P

panda  
 pants  
 paper  
 part-time job  
 party  
 patrol car  
 PC (computer)  
 peach  
 pen  
 pencil  
 pepper  
 pig  
 pigeon; dove  
 pillow  
 pink  
 pizza  
 plate  
 PM  
 potato  
 prefecture  
 present, gift  
 purple

## R

rabbit  
 radish  
 rare (adj.)

gantan  
 shinbun  
 raigetsu  
 raishuu  
 rainen  
 ii, yoi  
 kuji  
 iie  
 kita  
 hana  
 juuichigatsu  
 ima

juugatsu  
 mochiron  
 a!!  
 furui  
 roujin  
 ichiji  
 tamanegi  
 orenji  
 mikan / orenji  
 soto  
 asoko

panda  
 zubon  
 kami  
 arubaito  
 pa-ti-  
 patoka-  
 pasokon  
 momo  
 pen  
 enpitsu  
 koshou  
 buta  
 hato  
 makura  
 pinku  
 piza  
 (o) sara  
 gogo  
 poteto  
 ~ken  
 purezento  
 murasaki

usagi  
 daikon  
 mezurashii

がんたん  
 しんぶん  
 らいげつ  
 らいしゅう  
 らいねん  
 いい、よい  
 くじ  
 いいえ  
 きた  
 はな  
 じゅういちがつ  
 いま

じゅうがつ  
 もちろん  
 あっ！  
 ふるい  
 ろうじん  
 いちじ  
 たまねぎ  
 オレンジ  
 みかん / オレンジ  
 そと  
 あそこ

バンダ  
 ズボン  
 かみ  
 アルバイト  
 パーティー  
 パトカー  
 パソコン  
 もも  
 ペン  
 えんぴつ  
 こしょう  
 ぶた  
 はと  
 まくら  
 ピンク  
 ピザ  
 (お) さら  
 ごご  
 ポテト  
 ~けん  
 プレゼント  
 むらさき

うさぎ  
 だいこん  
 めずらしい

really dislike, really hate  
 really like, like a lot  
 reason  
 red  
 red  
 refrigerator  
 region  
 restaurant  
 restroom  
 right  
 rise in price  
 rock  
 roof  
 rumor

## S

salt  
 sand box  
 sandwich  
 sandwich (short vers.)  
 Saturday  
 school  
 screw  
 September  
 seven o'clock  
 sheep  
 shiny  
 ship; boat  
 shoe  
 shopping  
 shrimp  
 sightseeing  
 silver  
 six o'clock  
 small  
 snack, snacks  
 snake  
 soap  
 soccer  
 soldier  
 south  
 spaghetti  
 spring  
 spoon  
 Sports Day  
 squid  
 star (in the sky)  
 state  
 steel  
 storm  
 strawberry  
 Sunday  
 surgery  
 sushi

daikirai  
 daisuki  
 riyuu  
 aka  
 akai  
 reizouko  
 chiki  
 resutoran  
 otearai  
 migi  
 neage  
 iwa  
 yane  
 uwasa

shio  
 sunaba  
 sandoicchi  
 sando  
 doyoubi  
 gakkou  
 neji  
 kugatsu  
 shichiji  
 hitsuji  
 pikapika  
 fune  
 kutsu  
 kaimono  
 ebi  
 kankou  
 giniro  
 rokuji  
 chisai  
 okashi  
 hebi  
 sekken  
 sakka-  
 hertai  
 minami  
 supagetti-  
 haru  
 supu-n  
 taiikunohi  
 ika  
 hoshi  
 ~shuu  
 kane  
 arashi  
 ichigo  
 nichiyoubi  
 shujutsu  
 sushi

だいきらい  
 だいすき  
 りゅう  
 あか  
 あかい  
 れいぞうこ  
 ちいき  
 レストラン  
 おてあらい  
 みぎ  
 ねあげ  
 いわ  
 やね  
 うわさ

しお  
 すなば  
 サンドイッチ  
 サンド  
 だようび  
 がっこう  
 ねじ  
 くがつ  
 しちじ  
 ひつじ  
 ぴかぴか  
 ふね  
 くつ  
 かいもの  
 えび  
 かんこう  
 ぎんいろ  
 ろくじ  
 ちいさい  
 おかし  
 へび  
 せっけん  
 サッカー  
 へいたい  
 みなみ  
 スパゲッティー  
 はる  
 スプーン  
 たいいくのひ  
 いか  
 ほし  
 ~しゅう  
 かね  
 あらし  
 いちご  
 にちようび  
 しゅじゅつ  
 すし

## T

tastes good, delicious  
 teacher  
 telephone  
 television  
 ten o'clock  
 thank you, thanks  
 that one (out of 2)  
 that one (out of 3 or more)  
 that one over there (out of 2)  
 that one over there (out of 3 or more)  
 That's great. / That's awesome.  
 there, that place  
 thief  
 this month  
 this one (out of 2)  
 this one (out of 3 or more)  
 this week  
 this year  
 three o'clock  
 thunder; lightning  
 Thursday  
 tickets  
 to come  
 to drink water  
 to go  
 to move an item  
 to return  
 to stand out  
 to understand, know  
 to undress  
 today  
 toilet  
 tomato  
 tomorrow  
 tooth, teeth  
 toothbrush  
 tortoise; turtle  
 towel  
 train  
 trash can  
 travel  
 tricycle  
 Tuesday  
 tuna  
 twelve o'clock  
 two o'clock

olshii  
 sensei  
 denwa  
 terebi  
 juuji  
 arigatou  
 socchi  
 sore  
 acchi  
 are  
 sugoi desu ne  
 soko  
 dorobou  
 kongetsu  
 kocchi  
 kore  
 konshuu  
 kotoshi  
 sanji  
 kaminari  
 mokuyoubi  
 chiketto  
 kuru  
 mizuwo nomu  
 iku  
 hakobu  
 kaeru  
 medatsu  
 wakaru  
 nugu  
 kyou  
 toire  
 tomato  
 ashita  
 ha  
 haburashi  
 kame  
 taoru  
 densha  
 gomibako  
 ryokou  
 sanrinsha  
 kayoubi  
 maguro  
 juuniji  
 niji

おいしい  
 せんせい  
 でんわ  
 テレビ  
 じゅうじ  
 ありがとう  
 そっち  
 それ  
 あっち  
 あれ  
 すごい です ね  
 そこ  
 どろぼう  
 こんげつ  
 こっち  
 これ  
 こんしゅう  
 ことし  
 さんじ  
 かみなり  
 もくようび  
 チケット  
 くる  
 みずを のむ  
 いく  
 はこぶ  
 かえる  
 めだつ  
 わかる  
 ぬぐ  
 きょう  
 トイレ  
 トマト  
 あした  
 は  
 ハブラシ  
 かめ  
 タオル  
 でんしゃ  
 ごみばこ  
 りょうこう  
 さんりんしゃ  
 かようび  
 まぐろ  
 じゅうにじ  
 にじ

## U

umbrella  
 up

kasa  
 ue

かさ  
 うえ

## V

vegetable  
violence

yasai  
ranbou

やさい  
らんぼう

## W

want  
warm, luke warm  
water  
watermelon  
Wednesday  
Well, then~  
west  
what color?  
what day of the month?  
what day of the week?  
what language?  
what month?  
what nationality?  
what time?  
what year?  
what?  
what?, which?, what kind of?  
when?  
where?, what place?  
which one (three or more)  
which one (two items)  
white (adj.)  
white (noun)  
who?  
wife  
window  
wisdom  
work  
wrinkles

hoshii  
nurui  
mizu  
suika  
suiyoubi  
ja, jaa  
nishi  
nani iro  
nannichi  
nanyoubi  
nanigo  
nangatsu  
nanijin  
nanji  
nannen  
nani  
nanno ?  
itsu  
doko  
dore  
docchi  
shiroi  
shiro  
dare  
oyomesan  
mado  
chie  
shigoto  
shiwa

ほしい  
ぬるい  
みず  
すいか  
すいようび  
じゃ、じゃあ  
にし  
なにいろ  
なんにち  
なんようび  
なにご  
なんがつ  
なにじん  
なんじ  
なんねん  
なに  
なんの？  
いつ  
どこ  
どれ  
どっち  
しろい  
しろ  
だれ  
およめさん  
まど  
ちえ  
しごと  
しわ

## Y

yellow (adj.)  
yellow (noun)  
yen  
yes  
yesterday  
Yoshio - common boy's first name  
you

kiroi  
kiro  
en  
hai  
kinou  
Yoshio  
anata

きいろい  
きいろ  
えん  
はい  
きのう  
よしお  
あなた



## Ro-maji Glossary

### A

all  
acchi  
ahiru  
aisu kuri-mu  
aka  
akachan  
akai  
amerika  
anata  
ao  
aoi  
arashi  
are  
ari  
arigatou  
arubaito  
asatte  
ashi  
ashita  
asoko  
atama  
atarashii  
atsui

Oh!  
that one over there (out of 2)  
duck  
ice cream  
red  
baby  
red  
America  
you  
blue (noun)  
blue (adj.)  
a storm  
that one over there (out of 3 or more)  
ant  
thank you, thanks  
part-time job  
day after tomorrow  
foot; leg  
tomorrow  
over there, that place over there  
head  
new  
hot

あつ  
あっち  
あひる  
アイス・クリーム  
あか  
あかちゃん  
あかい  
アメリカ  
あなた  
あお  
あおい  
あら  
あれ  
あり  
ありがとう  
アルバイト  
あさって  
あし  
あした  
あそこ  
あたま  
あたらしい  
あつい

### B

bakuhatsu  
banana  
basu  
basuketto booru  
beddo  
bi-fu  
boku  
Braddo Pitto  
budou  
bunkanohi  
buta

explosion  
banana  
bus  
basketball  
bed  
beef  
I, me (males only)  
Brad Pitt (actor)  
grapes  
Culture Day  
pig

ばくはつ  
バナナ  
バス  
バスケットボール  
ベッド  
ビーフ  
ぼく  
ブラッド・ピット  
ぶどう  
ぶんかのひ  
ぶた

### C

chairo  
chairoi  
chawan  
chie  
chiiki  
chiisai  
chiketto  
chikin  
chi-zuba-ga-  
chuugoku

brown (noun)  
brown (adj.)  
bowl  
wisdom  
region  
small  
tickets  
chicken  
cheeseburger  
China

ちやいろ  
ちやいろい  
ちやわん  
ちえ  
ちいき  
ちいさい  
チケット  
チキン  
チーズバーガー  
ちゅうごく

**D**

daikirai  
daikon  
daisuki  
dare  
demo  
densha  
denwa  
deza-to  
docchi  
doko  
dokuritsu kinenbi  
donguri  
dore  
dorobou  
doru  
doyoubi

really dislike, really hate  
radish  
really like, like a lot  
who?  
but  
train  
telephone  
dessert  
which one (two items)  
where?, what place?  
Independence Day  
acorn  
which one (three or more)  
a thief  
dollars  
Saturday

だいきらい  
だいこん  
だいすき  
だれ  
でも  
でんしゃ  
でんわ  
デザート  
どっち  
どこ  
どくりつきねんび  
どんぐり  
どれ  
どろぼう  
ドル  
どうぶ

**E**

ebi  
eiga  
ekitai  
en  
enpitsu

shrimp  
movie  
liquid, fluid  
yen  
pencil

えび  
えいが  
えきたい  
えん  
えんぴつ

**F**

fo-ku  
fuku  
fune  
furui  
furu-tsu  
futon  
fuufu

fork  
clothing, clothes  
ship; boat  
old  
fruit  
futon  
married couple

フォーク  
ふく  
ふね  
ふるい  
フルーツ  
ふとん  
ふうふ

**G**

gakkou  
gantan  
gekkou  
genki desu  
genki desu ka  
getsuyoubi  
giniro  
ginkou  
go  
go  
gofun  
gogatsu  
gogo  
gohan  
goji  
gojuppun  
gojuugofun  
gokiburi  
gomibako

school  
New Year's Day  
moonlight  
I'm fine  
How are you? (Are you fine?)  
Monday  
silver  
bank  
~ language  
5  
5 minutes  
May  
PM (also means afternoon)  
boiled rice  
five o'clock  
50 minutes  
55 minutes  
cockroach  
trash can

がっこう  
がんたん  
げっこう  
げんき です  
げんき です か  
げつようび  
ぎんいろ  
ぎんこう  
ご  
ご  
ごふん  
ごがつ  
ごこ  
ごはん  
ごじ  
ごじゅっぷん  
ごじゅうごふん  
ごきぶり  
ごみばこ

goruden wi-ku  
gorufu  
gozen  
guree  
gyanburu

## H

ha  
haburashi  
hachi  
hachifun  
hachigatsu  
hachiji  
hae  
hai  
haiiro  
haiyuu  
hakobu  
han  
hana  
hana  
happun  
happyou  
Harrison Fo-do  
haru  
hashi  
hata  
hato  
hebi  
heilai  
hidari  
higashi  
hikouki  
hima  
hirame  
hitsuji  
hon  
hoshi  
hoshii

## I

ichi  
ichigatsu  
ichigo  
ichiji  
ie  
ii, yoi  
ie  
ika  
iku  
ikura  
ikutsu  
ima  
imakara

Golden Week  
golf  
AM (also means morning)  
gray  
gambling

tooth, teeth  
toothbrush  
8  
8 minutes  
August  
eight o'clock  
house fly  
yes  
gray  
actor  
to move an item  
half past (:30)  
flowers  
nose  
8 minutes  
an announcement  
Harrison Ford (actor)  
spring  
chopsticks  
flag  
pigeon, dove  
snake  
soldier  
left  
east  
airplane  
free time  
halibut  
sheep  
book  
star (in the sky)  
want

1  
January  
strawberry  
one o'clock  
house  
nice, good  
no  
squid  
to go  
How much?  
How many things?  
now  
from now / from now on

ゴールデンウィーク  
ゴルフ  
ごぜん  
グレー  
ギャンブル

は  
ハブラシ  
はち  
はちふん  
はちがつ  
はちじ  
はえ  
はい  
はいいろ  
はいゆう  
はこぶ  
はん  
はな  
はな  
はっぶん  
はっぴょう  
ハリソン・フォード  
はる  
はし  
はた  
はと  
へび  
へいたい  
ひだり  
ひがし  
ひこうき  
ひま  
ひらめ  
ひつじ  
ほん  
ほし  
ほしい

いち  
いちがつ  
いちご  
いちじ  
いえ  
いい、よい  
いいえ  
いか  
いく  
いくら  
いくつ  
いま  
いまから

inta-netto  
inu  
ippun  
iro  
isu  
itsu  
iwa

## J

ja, jaa  
jin  
jisho  
jitensha  
joudan  
jugyou  
juppun  
ju-su  
juu  
juugatsu  
juugofun  
juuhachifun  
juuhachifun  
juuichigatsu  
juuichiji  
juuippun  
juuji  
juukyuufun  
juunanafun  
juunifun  
juunigatsu  
juuniji  
juuoppun  
juusanpun  
juutan  
juuyonpun

## K

kaeru  
kaeru  
kagami  
kagi  
kaijuu  
kaimono  
kairo  
kame  
kamera  
kami  
kaminari  
kanada  
kane  
kani  
kankoku  
kankou  
kanojo  
kao

internet  
dog  
1 minute  
color  
chair  
when?  
rock

well, then~  
~ nationality  
dictionary  
bicycle  
a joke  
class  
10 minutes  
juice  
10  
October  
15 minutes  
18 minutes  
18 minutes  
November  
eleven o'clock  
11 minutes  
ten o'clock  
19 minutes  
17 minutes  
12 minutes  
December  
twelve o'clock  
16 minutes  
13 minutes  
carpet  
14 minutes

frog  
to return  
mirror  
key  
a monster  
shopping  
heat pad  
tortoise; turtle  
camera  
paper  
thunder, lightning  
Canada  
steel  
crab  
Korea  
sightseeing  
her, she, girlfriend  
face

インターネット  
いぬ  
いっぶん  
いろ  
いす  
いつ  
いわ

じゃ、じゃあ  
~じん  
じしょ  
じてんしゃ  
じょうだん  
じゅぎょう  
じゅっぶん  
ジュース  
じゅう  
じゅうがつ  
じゅうごふん  
じゅうはちふん  
じゅうはちふん  
じゅういちがつ  
じゅういちじ  
じゅういっぶん  
じゅうじ  
じゅうきゅうふん  
じゅうななふん  
じゅうにふん  
じゅうにがつ  
じゅうにじ  
じゅうろっぶん  
じゅうさんぶん  
じゅうたん  
じゅうよんぶん

かえる  
かえる  
かがみ  
かぎ  
かいじゅう  
かいもの  
かいろ  
かめ  
かめら  
かみ  
かみなり  
カナダ  
かね  
かに  
かんこく  
かんこう  
かのじょ  
かお

|               |                             |          |
|---------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| kare          | him, he, boyfriend          | かれ       |
| karenda-      | calendar                    | カレンダー    |
| kariforun a   | California                  | カリフォルニア  |
| kasa          | umbrella                    | かさ       |
| kayoubi       | Tuesday                     | かようび     |
| keeki         | cake                        | ケーキ      |
| keitaidenwa   | cellular phone              | けいたいでんわ  |
| ken           | ~ Prefecture                | ~けん      |
| kenpoukinenbi | Constitution Day            | けんぽうきねんび |
| kiro          | yellow (noun)               | きいろ      |
| kiroi         | yellow (adj.)               | きいろい     |
| kingyo        | goldfish                    | きんぎょ     |
| kiniro        | gold                        | きんいろ     |
| kinou         | yesterday                   | きのう      |
| kinyoubi      | Friday                      | きんようび    |
| kirai         | dislike, hate               | きらい      |
| kirin         | giraffe                     | きりん      |
| kita          | north                       | きた       |
| kitsune       | fox                         | きつね      |
| kocchi        | this one (out of 2)         | こっち      |
| kodomonohi    | Children's Day              | こどものひ    |
| ko-hi-        | coffee                      | コーヒー     |
| koko          | here, this place            | ここ       |
| kongetsu      | this month                  | こんげつ     |
| konnichiwa    | good afternoon              | こんにちは    |
| konpyu-ta-    | computer                    | コンピュータ   |
| konran        | confusion                   | こんらん     |
| konshuu       | this week                   | こんしゅう    |
| koppu         | cup; glass                  | コップ      |
| ko-ra         | cola                        | コーラ      |
| kore          | this one (out of 3 or more) | これ       |
| koshou        | pepper                      | こしょう     |
| kotoshi       | this year                   | ことし      |
| kouatsu       | high pressure               | こうあつ     |
| koube         | Kobe (city)                 | こうべ      |
| ku            | 9                           | く        |
| kuchi         | mouth                       | くち       |
| kudamono      | fruit                       | くだもの     |
| kugatsu       | September                   | くがつ      |
| kuji          | nine o'clock                | くじ       |
| kuma          | bear                        | くま       |
| kuri          | chestnut                    | くり       |
| kurisumasu    | Christmas                   | クリスマス    |
| kuro          | black (noun)                | くろ       |
| kuroi         | black (adj.)                | くろい      |
| kuru          | to come                     | くる       |
| kuruma        | car                         | くるま      |
| kutsu         | shoe                        | くつ       |
| kuukou        | airport                     | くうこう     |
| kyonen        | last year                   | きょねん     |
| kyou          | today                       | きょう      |
| kyouryuu      | dinosaur                    | きょうりゅう   |
| kyuu          | 9                           | きゅう      |
| kyuufun       | 9 minutes                   | きゅうふん    |

# M

mado  
maguro  
makura  
mane  
maru  
me  
medatsu  
megane  
meishi  
meijirushi  
menyu-  
mezurashii  
midon  
migi  
mikan / orenji  
mimi  
minami  
miruku  
misoshiru  
mizu  
mizuiro  
mizuwo nomu  
mochiron  
mokuji  
mokuyoubi  
momo  
moshimoshi  
moufu  
mune  
murasaki  
muzukashii

window  
tuna  
pillow  
imitation  
circle, zero  
eye  
to stand out  
glasses  
business card  
landmark  
menu  
rare (adj.)  
green  
right  
orange (fruit)  
ear  
south  
milk  
miso soup  
water  
light blue  
to drink water  
of course  
contents  
Thursday  
peach  
hello (on the phone)  
blanket  
chest  
purple  
difficult

まど  
まぐろ  
まくら  
まね  
まる  
め  
めだつ  
めがね  
めいし  
めじるし  
メニュー  
めずらしい  
みどり  
みぎ  
みかん / オレンジ  
みみ  
みなみ  
ミルク  
みそしる  
みず  
みずいろ  
みずをのむ  
もちろん  
もくじ  
もくようび  
もも  
もしもし  
もうふ  
むね  
むらさき  
むずかしい

# N

naka  
namae  
nana  
nanafun  
naname  
nanbon  
nangatsu  
nani  
nani iro  
nanigo  
nanijin  
nanji  
nanko  
nanmai  
nannen  
nannichi  
nanno?  
nanyoubi  
natsukashii  
neage  
negi

inside  
name  
7  
7 minutes  
diagonal  
How many cylindrical objects?  
what month?  
what?  
what color?  
what language?  
what nationality?  
what time?  
How many round objects?  
How many thin and flat objects?  
what year?  
what day of the month?  
what? which? what kind of?  
what day of the week?  
dear, longed for  
a rise in price  
green onion

なか  
なまえ  
なな  
ななぶん  
ななめ  
なんぼん  
なんがつ  
なに  
なにいろ  
なにご  
なにじん  
なんじ  
なんこ  
なんまい  
なんねん  
なんにち  
なんの?  
なんようび  
なつかしい  
ねあげ  
ねぎ

neji  
neko  
nezumi  
ni  
nichiyoubi  
nifun  
nigatsu  
nihon  
nihongo  
nihongo no sensei  
niji  
nijuppun  
nijuugofun  
nikki  
niku  
ninjin  
nishi  
nomimono  
no-to pasokon  
nugu  
nurui

a screw  
cat  
mouse  
2  
Sunday  
2 minutes  
February  
Japan  
Japanese language  
Japanese teacher  
two o'clock  
20 minutes  
25 minutes  
diary  
meat  
carrot  
west  
a drink, drinks  
laptop computer  
to undress  
warm, luke warm

ねじ  
ねこ  
ねずみ  
に  
にちようび  
にふん  
にがつ  
にほん  
にほんご  
にほんごの せんせい  
にじ  
にじゅうぶん  
にじゅうごふん  
にっき  
にく  
にんじん  
にし  
のみもの  
ノートパソコン  
ぬぐ  
ぬるい

## O

obaasan  
ocha  
ochawan  
ofuro  
ohashi  
ohayou gozaimasu  
ohiya  
oishi  
oishikunai  
ojiisan  
okaasan  
okane  
okashi  
okyakusan  
ongaku  
onomimono  
ooku  
orenji  
osara  
otearai  
ototoi  
otousan  
otsuri  
oyasuminasai  
oyomesan

grandmother  
green tea  
bowl  
bath  
chopsticks  
good morning  
cold drinking water  
tastes good, delicious  
doesn't taste good  
grandfather  
mother  
money  
a snack  
a customer or guest  
music  
a drink  
big  
orange (color)  
plate  
restroom  
day before yesterday  
father  
change  
good night  
wife

おばあさん  
おちゃ  
おちゃわん  
おふろ  
おはし  
おはよう ございます  
おひや  
おいしい  
おいしくない  
おじいさん  
おかあさん  
おかね  
おかし  
おきゃくさん  
おんがく  
おのみもの  
おおきい  
オレンジ  
おさら  
おてあらい  
おととい  
おとうさん  
おつり  
おやすみなさい  
およめさん

## P

pan  
panda  
pasokon  
pa-ti-

bread  
panda  
PC (computer)  
party

パン  
パンダ  
パソコン  
パーティー

patoka-  
pen  
pikapika  
pinku  
piza  
poteto  
poteto  
purezento

## R

raigetsu  
rainen  
raion  
raishuu  
rakugaki  
ranbou  
rasu begasu  
rei  
reizouko  
remon  
renraku  
resutoran  
retasu  
ringo  
riyuu  
robusuta-  
roku  
rokugatsu  
rokuji  
rokujuppun  
roppun  
rosanzerusu  
roujin  
rouka  
ryokou

## S

sakana  
sakka-  
samui  
san  
san (after name)  
sando  
sandoicchi  
sangatsu  
sanji  
sanjuppun  
sanjuugofun  
sanpun  
sanrinsha  
sara  
saru  
satoko  
sayounara  
seinengappi

patrol car  
pen  
shiny  
pink  
pizza  
French fries  
potato  
present, gift

next month  
next year  
lion  
next week  
graffiti  
violence  
Las Vegas  
zero, 0  
refrigerator  
lemon  
contact  
restaurant  
lettuce  
apple  
a reason  
lobster  
6  
June  
six o'clock  
60 minutes  
6 minutes  
Los Angeles  
old person  
hallway  
travel

fish  
soccer  
cold  
3  
Mr , Ms , Mrs., Miss  
sandwich (short vers.)  
sandwich  
March  
three o'clock  
30 minutes  
35 minutes  
3 minutes  
tricycle  
plate  
monkey  
a girl's first name  
good bye, farewell  
date of birth

パトカー  
ペン  
ぴかぴか  
ピンク  
ピザ  
ポテト  
ポテト  
プレゼント

らいげつ  
らいねん  
ライオン  
らいしゅう  
らくがき  
らんぼう  
ラスベガス  
れい  
れいぞうこ  
レモン  
れんらく  
レストラン  
レタス  
りんご  
りゅう  
ロブスター  
ろく  
ろくがつ  
ろくじ  
ろくじゅっぱん  
ろっぱん  
ロサンゼルス  
ろうじん  
ろうか  
りょうこう

さかな  
サッカー  
さむい  
さん  
さん  
サント  
サンドイッチ  
さんがつ  
さんじ  
さんじゅっぱん  
さんじゅうごふん  
さんぶん  
さんりんしゃ  
さら  
さる  
さとこ  
さようなら  
せいねんがっぴ



sekken  
 sengetsu  
 sensei  
 senshuu  
 shi  
 shi  
 shibafu  
 shichi  
 shichigatsu  
 shichiji  
 shigatsu  
 shigoto  
 shikago  
 shimo  
 shinbun  
 shinkansen  
 shio  
 shiro  
 shiroi  
 shita  
 shiwa  
 shoubousha  
 shujutsu  
 shukudai  
 shumi  
 shuu  
 socchi  
 soko  
 sore  
 soto  
 sugoi desu ne  
 suika  
 suiyoubi  
 suki  
 sunaba  
 supagetti-  
 supu-n  
 sushi

## T

tabako  
 tabemono  
 tabun  
 taikunohi  
 tamago  
 tamaneg  
 tanjoubi  
 tansan  
 taoru  
 te  
 teatsu  
 teppou  
 terebi  
 toire  
 tokage

soap  
 last month  
 teacher  
 last week  
 ~ City  
 4  
 grass  
 7  
 July  
 seven o'clock  
 April  
 work  
 Chicago  
 frost  
 newspaper  
 bullet train  
 salt  
 white  
 white  
 down  
 wrinkles  
 fire truck  
 surgery  
 homework  
 hobby  
 ~ State  
 that one (out of 2)  
 there, that place  
 that one (out of 3 or more)  
 outside  
 That's great. / That's awesome  
 watermelon  
 Wednesday  
 like  
 sand box  
 spaghetti  
 spoon  
 sushi

cigarettes  
 food  
 maybe  
 Sports Day  
 egg  
 onion  
 birthday  
 carbonation  
 towel  
 hand  
 low pressure  
 gun  
 television  
 toilet  
 lizard

せっけん  
 せんげつ  
 せんせい  
 せんしゅう  
 し  
 し  
 しばふ  
 しち  
 しちがつ  
 しちじ  
 しがつ  
 しごと  
 シカゴ  
 しも  
 しんぶん  
 しんかんせん  
 しお  
 しろ  
 しろい  
 した  
 しわ  
 しょうぼうしゃ  
 しゅじゅつ  
 しゅくだい  
 しゅみ  
 しゅう  
 そっち  
 そこ  
 それ  
 そと  
 すごい です ね  
 すいか  
 すいようび  
 すき  
 すなば  
 スパゲッティ  
 スプーン  
 すし

たばこ  
 たべもの  
 たぶん  
 たいいくのひ  
 たまご  
 たまねぎ  
 たんじょうび  
 たんさん  
 タオル  
 て  
 ていあつ  
 てっぽう  
 テレビ  
 トイレ  
 とかげ

tokei  
tomato  
tomodachi  
tori  
toumei  
tsumetai

## U

ue  
uma  
usagi  
ushi  
uwasa

## W

wakaru  
wasuremono  
watashi

## Y

yane  
yasai  
yasumi  
yoji  
yon  
yonjuppun  
yonjuugofun  
yonpun  
Yoshio  
youchien  
yubi  
yuuenchi

## Z

zasshi  
zero  
zou  
zubon

clock  
tomato  
friend  
bird  
clear  
cold to the touch

up  
horse  
rabbit  
cow  
a rumor

to understand, know  
forgotten item  
I, me (male or female)

roof  
vegetable  
day off, break  
four o'clock  
4  
40 minutes  
45 minutes  
4 minutes  
a common boy's first name  
kindergarten  
finger  
fun park

magazine  
zero, 0  
elephant  
pants

とけい  
トマト  
ともだち  
とり  
とうめい  
つめたい

うえ  
うま  
うさぎ  
うし  
うわさ

わかる  
わすれもの  
わたし

やね  
やさい  
やすみ  
よじ  
よん  
よんじゅっぶん  
よんじゅうごふん  
よんぶん  
よしお  
ようちえん  
ゆび  
ゆうえんち

ざっし  
ゼロ  
ぞう  
ズボン

## Kana Glossary

### あ

アイス・クリーム

あお

あおい

あか

あかい

あかちゃん

あさって

あし

あした

あそこ

あたま

あたらしい

あっ！

あつい

あっち

あなた

あひる

アメリカ

あらし

あり

ありがとう

アルバイト

あれ

ice cream

blue (noun)

blue (adj.)

red

red

baby

day after tomorrow

foot; leg

tomorrow

over there, that place over there

head

new

Oh!

hot

that one over there (out of 2)

you

duck

America

a storm

ant

thank you, thanks

part-time job

that one over there (out of 3 or more)

aisu kuri-mu

ao

aoi

aka

akai

akachan

asatte

ashi

ashita

asoko

atama

atarashii

a!!

atsui

acchi

anata

ahiru

amerika

arashi

ari

arigatou

arubaito

are

### い

いい、よい

いいえ

いえ

いか

いく

いくつ

いくら

いす

いち

いちがつ

いちご

いちじ

いつ

いっぶん

いぬ

いま

いまから

いろ

いわ

インターネット

nice, good

no

house

squid

to go

How many things?

How much?

chair

1

January

strawberry

one o'clock

when?

1 minute

dog

now

from now / from now on

color

rock

internet

ii, yoi

ie \*

ie

ika

iku

ikutsu

ikura

isu

ichi

ichigatsu

ichigo

ichiji

itsu

ippun

inu

ima

imakara

iro

iwa

inta-netto

## う

うえ  
うさぎ  
うし  
うま  
うわさ

up  
rabbit  
cow  
horse  
a rumor

ue  
usag  
ushi  
uma  
uwasa

## え

えいが  
えきたい  
えび  
えん  
えんぴつ

movie  
liquid, fluid  
shrimp  
yen  
pencil

eiga  
ekitai  
ebi  
en  
enpitsu

## お

おいしい  
おいしくない  
おおきい  
おかあさん  
おかし  
おかね  
おきゃくさん  
おさら  
おじいさん  
おちゃ  
おちゃわん  
おつり  
おてあらい  
おとうさん  
おととい  
おのみもの  
おばあさん  
おはし  
おはよう ございます  
おひや  
おふろ  
おやすみなさい  
およめさん  
オレンジ  
おんがく

tastes good, delicious  
doesn't taste good  
big  
mother  
a snack  
money  
a customer or guest  
plate  
grandfather  
green tea  
bowl  
change  
restroom  
father  
day before yesterday  
a drink  
grandmother  
chopsticks  
good morning  
cold drinking water  
bath  
good night  
wife  
orange (color)  
music

oishii  
oishikunai  
ookii  
okaasan  
okashi  
okane  
okyakusan  
osara  
ojiisan  
ocha  
ochawan  
otsun  
otearai  
otousan  
ototoi  
onomimono  
obaasan  
ohashi  
ohayou gozaimasu  
ohiya  
ofuro  
oyasuminasai  
oyomesan  
orenji  
ongaku

## か

かいじゅう  
かいもの  
かいろう  
かえる  
かえる  
かお  
かがみ

a monster  
shopping  
heat pad  
frog  
to return  
face  
mirror

kaijuu  
kaimono  
kairo  
kaeru  
kaeru  
kao  
kagami

かぎ  
 かさ  
 がっこう  
 カナダ  
 かに  
 かね  
 かのじょ  
 かみ  
 かみなり  
 かめ  
 かめら  
 かようび  
 カリフォルニア  
 かれ  
 カレンダー  
 かんこう  
 かんこく  
 がんたん

key  
 umbrella  
 school  
 Canada  
 crab  
 steel  
 her, she, girlfriend  
 paper  
 thunder; lightning  
 tortoise; turtle  
 camera  
 Tuesday  
 California  
 him, he, boyfriend  
 calendar  
 sightseeing  
 Korea  
 New Year's Day

kagi  
 kasa  
 gakkou  
 kanada  
 kani  
 kane  
 kanojo  
 kami  
 kaminari  
 kame  
 kamera  
 kayoubi  
 kariforunia  
 kare  
 karenda-  
 kankou  
 kankoku  
 gantan

## き

きいろ  
 きいろい  
 きた  
 きつね  
 きのう  
 ギャンブル  
 きゅう  
 きゅうふん  
 きょう  
 きょうりゅう  
 きょねん  
 きらい  
 きりん  
 きんいろ  
 ぎんいろ  
 きんぎょ  
 ぎんこう  
 きんようび

yellow (noun)  
 yellow (adj.)  
 north  
 fox  
 yesterday  
 gambling  
 9  
 9 minutes  
 today  
 dinosaur  
 last year  
 dislike, hate  
 giraffe  
 gold  
 silver  
 goldfish  
 bank  
 Friday

kiro  
 kiroi  
 kita  
 kitsune  
 kinou  
 gyanburu  
 kyuu  
 kyuufun  
 kyou  
 kyouryuu  
 kyonen  
 kirai  
 kirin  
 kiniro  
 giniro  
 kingyo  
 ginkou  
 kinyoubi

## <

く  
 こうこう  
 くがつ  
 くじ  
 くだもの  
 ぐち  
 くつ  
 くま  
 くり  
 クリスマス  
 くる  
 くるま

공항  
 airport  
 September  
 nine o'clock  
 fruit  
 mouth  
 shoe  
 bear  
 chestnut  
 Christmas  
 to come  
 car

ku  
 kuukou  
 kugatsu  
 kuji  
 kudamono  
 kuchi  
 kutsu  
 kuma  
 kuri  
 kurisumasu  
 kuru  
 kuruma

グレー  
くろ  
くろい

gray  
black (noun)  
black (adj.)

guree  
kuro  
kuroi

## け

けいたいでんわ  
ケーキ  
げっこう  
げつようび  
けん  
げんき です  
げんき ですか  
けんぽうぎねんび

cellular phone  
cake  
moonlight  
Monday  
~ Prefecture  
I'm fine  
How are you? (Are you fine?)  
Constitution Day

keitaidenwa  
keeki  
gekkou  
getsuyoubi  
~ken  
genk. desu  
genk. desu ka  
kenpoukinenbi

## こ

こ  
こ  
こうあつ  
こうべ  
コーヒー  
コーラ  
ゴールデンウィーク  
こがつ  
こきぶり  
ここ  
ここ  
こじ  
こじゅうごふん  
こじゅうぶん  
こしょう  
こぜん  
こっち  
コップ  
ことし  
こどものひ  
ごはん  
ごふん  
ごみばこ  
ゴルフ  
これ  
こんげつ  
こんしゅう  
こんにちば  
コンピューター  
こんらん

~ language  
5  
high pressure  
Kobe (city)  
coffee  
cola  
Golden Week  
May  
cockroach  
here, this place  
PM (also means afternoon)  
five o'clock  
55 minutes  
50 minutes  
pepper  
AM (also means morning)  
this one (out of 2)  
cup; glass  
this year  
Children's Day  
boiled rice  
5 minutes  
trash can  
golf  
this one (out of 3 or more)  
this month  
this week  
good afternoon  
computer  
confusion

~go  
go  
kouatsu  
koube  
ko-hi-  
ko-ra  
goruden wi-ku  
gogatsu  
gokiburi  
koko  
gogo  
goji  
gojuugofun  
gojuppun  
koshou  
gozen  
kocchi  
koppu  
kotoshi  
kodomonohi  
gohan  
gofun  
gomibako  
gorufu  
kore  
kongetsu  
konshuu  
konn chiwa  
konpyu-ta-  
konran

## さ

さかな  
サッカー  
ざっし  
さとこ

fish  
soccer  
magazine  
a girl's first name

sakana  
sakka-  
zasshi  
satoko

さむい  
 さようなら  
 さら  
 さる  
 さん  
 さん  
 さんがつ  
 さんじ  
 さんじゅうごふん  
 さんじゅうぷん  
 サンド  
 サンドイッチ  
 さんぷん  
 さんりんしゃ

cold  
 good bye, farewell  
 plate  
 monkey  
 3  
 Mr , Ms., Mrs., Miss  
 March  
 three o'clock  
 35 minutes  
 30 minutes  
 sandwich (short vers.)  
 sandwich  
 3 minutes  
 tricycle

samui  
 sayounara  
 sara  
 saru  
 san  
 san (after name)  
 sangatsu  
 sanji  
 sanjūgofun  
 sanjūppun  
 sando  
 sandoicchi  
 sanpun  
 sanrinsha

## し

し  
 し  
 しお  
 シカゴ  
 しがつ  
 しごと  
 じしょ  
 した  
 しち  
 しちがつ  
 しちじ  
 じてんしゃ  
 しばふ  
 しも  
 じゃ、じゃあ  
 しゅう  
 じゅう  
 じゅういちがつ  
 じゅういちじ  
 じゅういっぷん  
 じゅうがつ  
 じゅうきゅうふん  
 じゅうごふん  
 じゅうさんぷん  
 じゅうじ  
 ジュース  
 じゅうたん  
 じゅうななふん  
 じゅうにがつ  
 じゅうにじ  
 じゅうにふん  
 じゅうはちふん  
 じゅうはちふん  
 じゅうよんぷん  
 じゅうろっぷん  
 じゅうぎょう  
 しゅくだい  
 しゅじゅつ

~ City  
 4  
 salt  
 Chicago  
 April  
 work  
 dictionary  
 down  
 7  
 July  
 seven o'clock  
 bicycle  
 grass  
 frost  
 well, then~  
 ~ State  
 10  
 November  
 eleven o'clock  
 11 minutes  
 October  
 19 minutes  
 15 minutes  
 13 minutes  
 ten o'clock  
 juice  
 carpet  
 17 minutes  
 December  
 twelve o'clock  
 12 minutes  
 18 minutes  
 18 minutes  
 14 minutes  
 16 minutes  
 class  
 homework  
 surgery

~shi  
 shi  
 shio  
 shikago  
 shigatsu  
 shigoto  
 jisho  
 shita  
 shichi  
 shichigatsu  
 shichiji  
 jitensha  
 shibafu  
 shimo  
 ja, jaa  
 ~shuu  
 juu  
 juuichigatsu  
 juuichi  
 juuippun  
 juugatsu  
 juukyuufun  
 juugofun  
 juusanpun  
 juuji  
 ju-su  
 juutan  
 juunanafun  
 juunigatsu  
 juuniji  
 juunifun  
 juuhachifun  
 juuhachifun  
 juuyonpun  
 juuoppun  
 jugyou  
 shukudai  
 shujutsu

じゅっぶん  
しゅみ  
じょうだん  
しょうぼうしゃ  
しろ  
しろい  
しわ  
じん  
しんかんせん  
しんぶん

10 minutes  
hobby  
a joke  
fire truck  
white  
white  
wrinkles  
~ nationality  
bullet train  
newspaper

juppun  
shumi  
joudan  
shoubousha  
shiro  
shiro  
shiwa  
~jin  
shinkansen  
shinbun

## す

すいか  
すいようび  
すき  
すごい です ね  
すし  
すなば  
スパゲッティー  
スプーン  
ズボン

watermelon  
Wednesday  
like  
That's great / That's awesome  
sushi  
sand box  
spaghetti  
spoon  
pants

suika  
suiyoubi  
suki  
sugo desu ne  
sushi  
sunaba  
supagetti-  
supu-n  
zubon

## せ

せいねんがっぴ  
せっけん  
ゼロ  
せんげつ  
せんしゅう  
せんせい

date of birth  
soap  
zero, 0  
last month  
last week  
teacher

seinengappi  
sekken  
zero  
sengetsu  
senshuu  
sensei

## そ

ぞう  
そこ  
そっち  
そと  
それ

elephant  
there, that place  
that one (out of 2)  
outside  
that one (out of 3 or more)

zou  
soko  
socchi  
soto  
sore

## た

たいいくのひ  
だいきらい  
だいこん  
だいすき  
タオル  
たばこ  
たぶん  
たべもの  
たまご  
たまねぎ  
だれ  
たんさん

Sports Day  
really dislike, really hate  
radish  
really like, like a lot  
towel  
cigarettes  
maybe  
food  
egg  
onion  
who?  
carbonation

taiikunohi  
daikirai  
daikon  
daisuki  
taoru  
tabako  
tabun  
tabemono  
tamago  
tamanegi  
dare  
tansan



たんじょうび

birthday

tanjoubi

## ち

ちいき  
ちいさい  
チーズバーガー  
ちえ  
チキン  
チケット  
ちやいろ  
ちやいろい  
ちやわん  
ちゅうごく

region  
small  
cheeseburger  
wisdom  
chicken  
tickets  
brown (noun)  
brown (adj )  
bowl  
China

chiiki  
chiisai  
chi-zuba-ga-  
chie  
chikin  
chiketto  
chairo  
chairoi  
chawan  
chuugoku

## つ

つめたい

cold to the touch

tsumetai

## て

て  
ていあつ  
デザート  
てっぽう  
でも  
テレビ  
でんしゃ  
でんわ

hand  
low pressure  
dessert  
gun  
but  
television  
train  
telephone

te  
teiatsu  
deza-to  
teppou  
demo  
terebi  
densha  
denwa

## と

トイレ  
とうめい  
とかげ  
どくりつきねんび  
とけい  
どこ  
どっち  
トマト  
ともだち  
どようび  
とり  
ドル  
どれ  
どろぼう  
どんぐり

toilet  
clear  
lizard  
Independence Day  
clock  
where?, what place?  
which one (two items)  
tomato  
friend  
Saturday  
bird  
dollars  
which one (three or more)  
a thief  
acorn

toire  
toumei  
tokage  
dokuritsu kinenbi  
tokei  
doko  
docchi  
tomato  
tomodachi  
doyoubi  
tori  
doru  
dore  
dorobou  
donguri

## な

なか  
なつかしい

inside  
dear, longed for

naka  
natsukashii

なな  
 ななぶん  
 ななめ  
 なに  
 なにいろ  
 なにご  
 なにじん  
 なまえ  
 なんがつ  
 なんこ  
 なんじ  
 なんにち  
 なんねん  
 なんの？  
 なんぼん  
 なんまい  
 なんようび

7  
 7 minutes  
 diagonal  
 what?  
 what color?  
 what language?  
 what nationality?  
 name  
 what month?  
 How many round objects?  
 what time?  
 what day of the month?  
 what year?  
 what? which? what kind of?  
 How many cylindrical objects?  
 How many thin and flat objects?  
 what day of the week?

nana  
 nanafun  
 naname  
 nani  
 nani ro  
 nanigo  
 nanijin  
 namae  
 nangatsu  
 nanko  
 nanji  
 nannichi  
 nannen  
 nanno ?  
 nanbon  
 nanmai  
 nanyoubi

## に

に  
 にがつ  
 にく  
 にし  
 にじ  
 にじゅうごふん  
 にじゅうぶふん  
 にちようび  
 にっき  
 にふん  
 にほん  
 にほんご  
 にほんごの せんせい  
 にんじん

2  
 February  
 meat  
 west  
 two o'clock  
 25 minutes  
 20 minutes  
 Sunday  
 diary  
 2 minutes  
 Japan  
 Japanese language  
 Japanese teacher  
 carrot

ni  
 nigatsu  
 niku  
 nishi  
 niji  
 nijugofun  
 nijuppun  
 nichiyoubi  
 nikki  
 nifun  
 nihon  
 nihongo  
 nihongo no sensei  
 ninjin

## ぬ

ぬぐ  
 ぬるい

to undress  
 warm, luke warm

nugu  
 nurui

## ね

ねあげ  
 ねぎ  
 ねこ  
 ねじ  
 ねずみ

a rise in price  
 green onion  
 cat  
 a screw  
 mouse

neage  
 negi  
 neko  
 neji  
 nezumi

## の

ノートパソコン  
 のみもの

laptop computer  
 a drink, drinks

no—to pasokon  
 nomimono

## は

は  
パーティー  
はい  
はいいろ  
はいゆう  
はえ  
ばくはつ  
はこぶ  
はし  
バス  
バスケットボール  
パソコン  
はた  
はち  
はちがつ  
はちじ  
はちふん  
はっぴょう  
はっぶん  
はと  
パトカー  
はな  
はな  
バナナ  
ハブラシ  
ハリソン・フォード  
はる  
はん  
パン  
パンダ

tooth, teeth  
party  
yes  
gray  
actor  
house fly  
explosion  
to move an item  
chopsticks  
bus  
basketball  
PC (computer)  
flag  
8  
August  
eight o'clock  
8 minutes  
an announcement  
8 minutes  
pigeon, dove  
patrol car  
flowers  
nose  
banana  
toothbrush  
Harrison Ford (actor)  
spring  
half past (:30)  
bread  
panda

ha  
pa-ti-  
hai  
haiiro  
haiyuu  
hae  
bakunatsu  
hakobu  
hash  
basu  
basuketto booru  
pasokon  
hata  
hach  
hach gatsu  
hachji  
hach fun  
happyou  
happun  
hato  
patoka-  
hana  
hana  
banana  
haburashi  
Harison Fo-do  
haru  
han  
pan  
panda

## ひ

ビーフ  
ひがし  
びかびか  
ひこうき  
ピザ  
ひだり  
ひっじ  
ひま  
ひらめ  
ピンク

beef  
east  
shiny  
airplane  
pizza  
left  
sheep  
free time  
halibut  
pink

bi-fu  
higashi  
pikapika  
hikouki  
piza  
hidan  
hitsuji  
hima  
hirame  
pinku

## ふ

ふうふ  
フォーク  
ふく  
ぶた  
ぶどう

married couple  
fork  
clothing, clothes  
pig  
grapes

fuufu  
fo-ku  
fuku  
buta  
budou

ふとん  
ふね  
ブラッド・ピット  
ふるい  
フルーツ  
プレゼント  
ぶんかのひ

futon  
ship; boat  
Brad Pitt (actor)  
old  
fruit  
present, gift  
Culture Day

futon  
fune  
Braddo Pitto  
furui  
furu-tsu  
purezento  
bunkanohi

## へ

へいたい  
ベッド  
へび  
ペン

soldier  
bed  
snake  
pen

heita  
beddo  
hebi  
pen

## ほ

ぼく  
ほし  
ほしい  
ポテト  
ポテト  
ほん

I, me (males only)  
star (in the sky)  
want  
French fries  
potato  
book

boku  
hosh  
hosh i  
poteto  
poteto  
hon

## ま

まくら  
まぐろ  
まど  
まね  
まる

pillow  
tuna  
window  
imitation  
circle, zero

makura  
maguro  
mado  
mane  
maru

## み

みかん / オレンジ  
みぎ  
みず  
みずいろ  
みずを のむ  
みそしる  
みどり  
みなみ  
みみ  
ミルク

orange (fruit)  
right  
water  
light blue  
to drink water  
miso soup  
green  
south  
ear  
milk

mikan / orenji  
migi  
mizu  
mizuiro  
mizuwo nomu  
misoshiru  
midori  
minami  
mimi  
miruku

## む

むずかしい  
むね  
むらさき

difficult  
chest  
purple

muzukashii  
mune  
murasaki

## め

め  
めいし  
めがね  
めじるし  
めずらしい  
めだつ  
メニュー

eye  
business card  
glasses  
landmark  
rare (adj.)  
to stand out  
menu

me  
meishi  
megane  
mejirushi  
mezurashi  
medatsu  
menyu-

## も

もうふ  
もくじ  
もくようび  
もしもし  
もちろん  
もも

blanket  
contents  
Thursday  
hello (on the phone)  
of course  
peach

moufu  
mokuji  
mokuyoubi  
moshimoshi  
mochiron  
momo

## や

やさい  
やすみ  
やね

vegetable  
day off, break  
roof

yasai  
yasumi  
yane

## ゆ

ゆうえんち  
ゆび

fun park  
finger

yuuenchi  
yubi

## よ

ようちえん  
よじ  
よしお  
よん  
よんじゅうごふん  
よんじゅうぷん  
よんぷん

kindergarten  
four o'clock  
a common boy's first name  
4  
45 minutes  
40 minutes  
4 minutes

youchien  
yoji  
Yoshio  
yon  
yonjuugofun  
yonjuppun  
yonpun

## ら

ライオン  
らいげつ  
らいしゅう  
らいねん  
らくがき  
ラスベガス  
らんぼう

lion  
next month  
next week  
next year  
graffiti  
Las Vegas  
violence

raion  
raigetsu  
raishuu  
rainen  
rakugaki  
rasu begasu  
ranbou

## り

りゆう  
りょこう  
りんご

a reason  
travel  
apple

riyuu  
ryokou  
ringo

## れ

れい  
れいぞうこ  
レストラン  
レタス  
レモン  
れんらく

zero, 0  
refrigerator  
restaurant  
lettuce  
lemon  
contact

rei  
reizouko  
resutoran  
retasu  
remon  
renraku

## ろ

ろうか  
ろうじん  
ろく  
ろくがつ  
ろくじ  
ろくじゅっぱん  
ロサンゼルス  
ろっぱん  
ロブスター

hallway  
old person  
6  
June  
six o'clock  
60 minutes  
Los Angeles  
6 minutes  
lobster

rouka  
roujin  
roku  
rokugatsu  
rokuji  
rokujuppan  
rosanzerusu  
roppun  
robusuta-

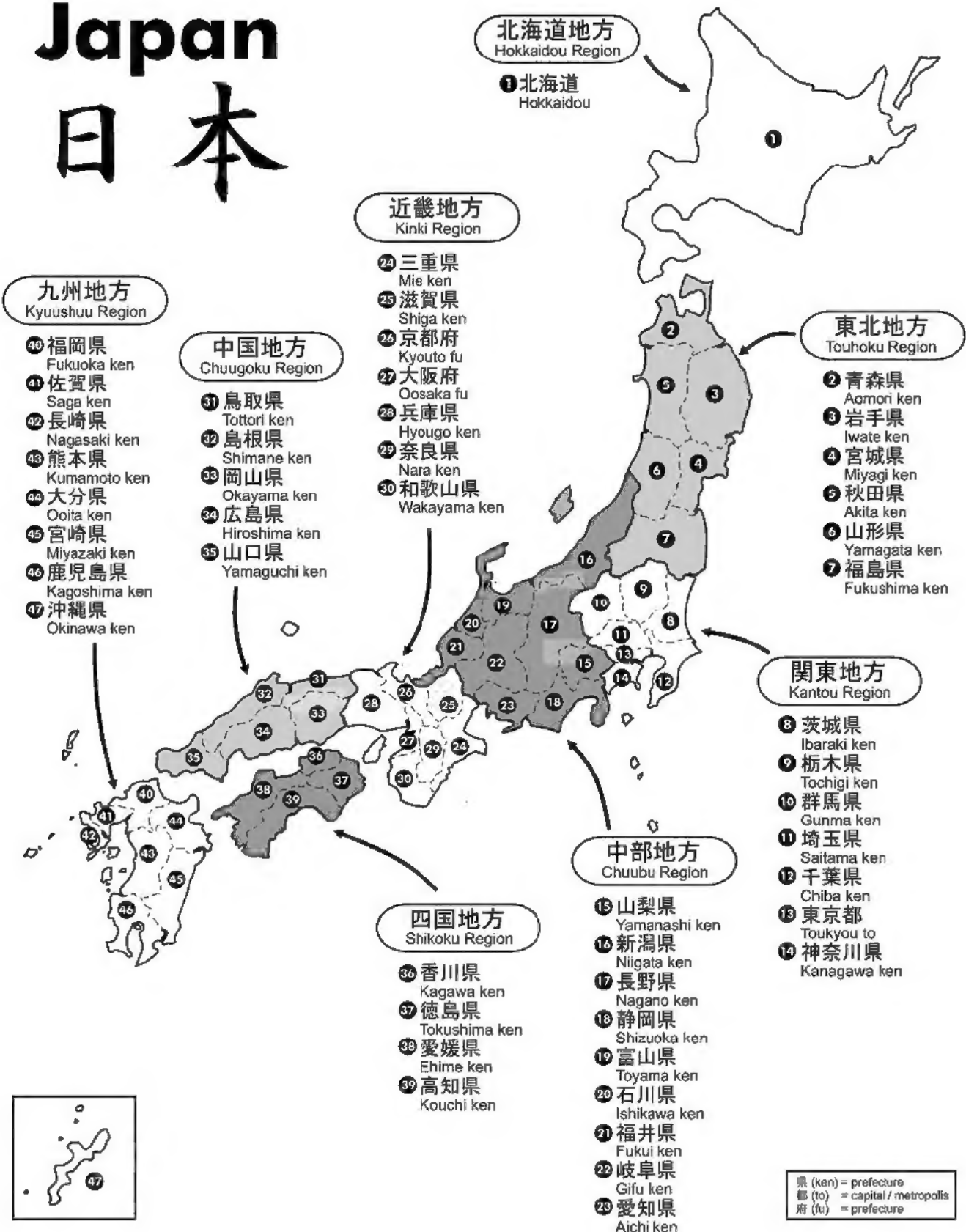
## わ

わかる  
わすれもの  
わたし

to understand, know  
forgotten item  
I, me (male or female)

wakaru  
wasuremono  
watashi

# Japan 日本



# YesJapan Hiragana Chart ひらがな

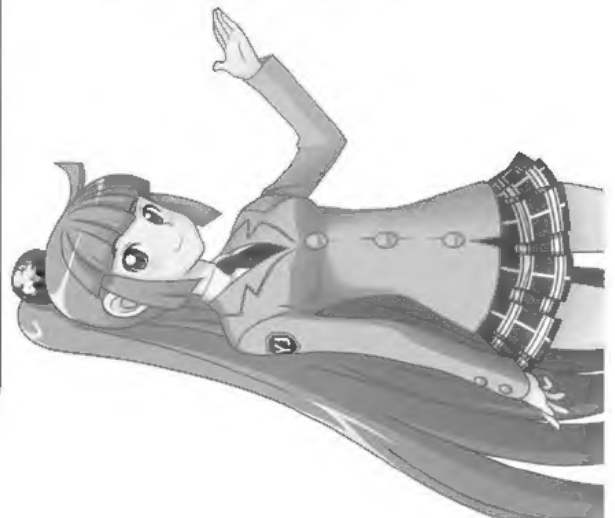


Learn Japanese Today!

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| わ | ら | ま | ば | は | な | だ | た | ざ | さ | が | か | あ |
| り | み | ぴ | び | ひ | に | ぢ | ち | じ | し | ぎ | き | い |
| る | む | ぷ | ぶ | ふ | ぬ | づ | つ | ず | す | ぐ | く | う |
| れ | め | ぺ | べ | へ | ね | で | て | ぜ | せ | げ | け | え |
| ろ | も | ぽ | ぼ | ほ | の | ど | と | ぞ | そ | ご | こ | お |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| り | み | ぴ | び | ひ | に | ち | じ | し | ぎ | き |
| ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ | ゃ |
| り | み | ぴ | び | ひ | に | ち | じ | し | ぎ | き |
| ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ | ゅ |
| り | み | ぴ | び | ひ | に | ち | じ | し | ぎ | き |
| ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ | ょ |

YesJapan.com





# Other From Zero! Books

